

MY17 RG Colorado

Owner's Manual



Holden

GM Holden Ltd, ABN 84 006 893 232, Holden New Zealand Ltd., Company Number 1602 (hereinafter Holden)

Change of name, address or ownership

If you drive a pre-owned Holden, have moved house or changed any of your details, we'd like to hear from you!

Holden uses your details to keep your vehicle's factory provided Roadside Assistance and Warranty details up to date.

It also helps us let you know if there is an existing safety recall or rework on your vehicle. To update your details, please take a few minutes to fill in and mail the form at the back of the Service & Warranty Booklet or visit Holden's website at: www.holden.com.au/forms/change-of-owner-details

GM Holden Ltd (Holden) is collecting the new owner's personal information in order to process the request for transfer for the specified vehicle. We may disclose your personal information to our related companies and third parties who provide us with (or help us provide) products and services, including to overseas locations such as the USA, and other countries in Europe, Oceania and Asia.

Holden's privacy policy (available at: www.holden.com.au/privacypolicy) states how you can seek to access or correct any personal information Holden holds about you, how to complain about a privacy breach by Holden and how Holden will deal with a privacy complaint.

You can contact Holden on 1800 033 349 or alternatively, you may prefer to email Holden at: holdencustomer care@gm.com

Note: Please refer to the inside front cover of the Service & Warranty Booklet for the Vehicle Identification Certificate.

Printed in Australia

Part No. 92289242

December 2016

(MY17 RG Colorado. Print 3)

© 2016 GM Holden Ltd.

© 2016 Holden New Zealand Ltd.

Reproduction in whole or part is
prohibited without written approval from

GM Holden Ltd., ABN 84 006 893 232 (Australia) or

Holden New Zealand Ltd., Company Number 1602 (New Zealand)

Contents

Introduction	2
In Brief	5
Keys, Doors, and Windows	17
Seats and Restraints	32
Storage	51
Instruments and Controls	60
Lighting	87
Infotainment System	94
Climate Controls	174
Driving and Operating	181
Vehicle Care	221
Service and Maintenance	263
Technical Data	265
Customer Information	271
Index	274

Introduction

We thank you for choosing Holden and want to assure you of our continuing interest in your driving pleasure and satisfaction.

This owner's manual applies to the current Colorado vehicle. Therefore, due to different models and options, you may find reference in this manual to some equipment not fitted to your own vehicle.

Please note that all information, illustrations and specifications in this manual are based on the latest production information available at the time of printing.

Holden reserves the right to make changes at any time without notice and without incurring any obligation.

Your vehicle is a designed combination of advanced technology, safety, environmental friendliness and economy.

This Owner's Manual provides you with all the necessary information to enable you to drive your vehicle safely and efficiently.

Make sure your passengers are aware of the possible risk of accident and injury which may result from improper use of the vehicle.

Using this Manual

- This manual describes all options and features available for this model. **Certain descriptions, including those for display and menu functions, may not apply to your vehicle due to model variant, special equipment or accessories.**
- The "In brief" section will give you an initial overview.

- The table of contents at the beginning of this manual and within each section shows where the information is located.
- The index will enable you to search for specific information.
- Directional data, e.g. left or right, or front or back, always relate to the direction of travel.
- Display messages and interior labelling are written in bold letters.
- For a complete list of the registered trademarks contained in this manual see Trademarks and License Agreements. *Trademarks and Licence Agreements* ⇨ 139, *Trademarks and Licence Agreements* ⇨ 172 and *Trademarks and Licence Agreements* ⇨ 271.

Danger, Warning, and Caution

Danger

Text marked  **Danger** provides information on risk of fatal injury. Disregarding this information may endanger life.

Warning

Text marked  **Warning** provides information on risk of accident or injury. Disregarding this information may lead to injury.

Caution

Text marked **Caution** provides information on possible damage to the vehicle. Disregarding this information may lead to vehicle damage.



NOTES

In Brief

Instrument Panel

Instrument Panel Overview 5

Initial Drive Information

Remote Keyless Entry (RKE)	
System	7
Remote Vehicle Start	7
Seat Adjustment	8
Head Restraint Adjustment	10
Safety Belts	10
Mirror Adjustment	11
Steering Wheel Adjustment	11
Exterior Lighting	12
Horn	13
Washer and Wiper Systems ...	13
Climate Controls	14
Transmission	14
Parking	15
Getting Started	16

Instrument Panel

Instrument Panel Overview



1. Exterior Lamp Controls ⇨ 87
2. Side Air Vents. See *Adjustable Air Vents* ⇨ 178
3. Steering Wheel Controls ⇨ 63
4. Turn and Lane-Change Signals ⇨ 89

Headlamp High/Low-Beam Changer ⇨ 88

Flash-to-Pass ⇨ 88

Driver Information Centre (DIC) ⇨ 75

- | | | |
|---|--|--|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none">5. <i>Instrument Panel Overview</i> ⇨ 616. <i>Horn</i> ⇨ 63<ul style="list-style-type: none">Driver's Airbag. See <i>Airbag and Seat Belt Tensioner Light</i> ⇨ 707. <i>Driver Information Centre (DIC)</i> ⇨ 758. <i>Cruise Control</i> ⇨ 2019. <i>Windscreen Wiper, Windscreen Washer System</i>. See <i>Windshield Wiper/Washer</i> ⇨ 6410. <i>Central Air Vents</i>. See <i>Adjustable Air Vents</i> ⇨ 17811. <i>Radio Controls and Display</i>. See <i>Overview</i> ⇨ 95 or <i>Overview</i> ⇨ 14812. <i>Hazard Warning Flashers</i> ⇨ 8913. <i>Passenger Airbag</i>. See <i>Front Airbag System</i> ⇨ 4214. <i>Glove Box</i> ⇨ 52 | <ul style="list-style-type: none">15. <i>Manual Transmission</i> ⇨ 19116. <i>Power Outlets</i> ⇨ 6517. <i>Descent Control System (DCS)</i> ⇨ 19918. <i>Traction Control System (TCS)</i> ⇨ 198<ul style="list-style-type: none"><i>Electronic Stability Control (ESC)</i> ⇨ 19819. <i>Shift Lever</i> ⇨ 18920. <i>Steering Wheel Adjustment</i> ⇨ 6221. <i>Bonnet Release Lever</i>. See <i>Bonnet</i> ⇨ 22422. <i>Clutch Pedal</i>. See <i>Manual Transmission</i> ⇨ 19123. <i>Brake Pedal</i>. See <i>Brakes</i> ⇨ 19624. <i>Throttle Pedal</i>. See <i>New Vehicle Break-In</i> ⇨ 18425. <i>Fuel Tank Flap Release Lever</i>. See <i>Filling the Tank</i> ⇨ 213 | <ul style="list-style-type: none">26. <i>Instrument Panel Fuse Block</i> ⇨ 24227. <i>Ignition Positions</i> ⇨ 18428. <i>Climate Control Systems</i> ⇨ 17429. <i>Instrument Panel Storage</i> ⇨ 5130. <i>Lane Departure Warning (LDW)</i> ⇨ 21031. <i>Parking Assist</i> ⇨ 20532. <i>Reflected LED Alert</i>. See <i>Forward Collision Alert (FCA) System</i> ⇨ 203 |
|---|--|--|

Initial Drive Information

Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) System

Remote keyless entry



The key operates all doors and the ignition.

- Press  once to unlock the driver's door.
- Press  twice to unlock all other doors.

The hazard lamps flash twice.

- Press and hold  to automatically open all windows.

- Press  to lock the doors.

The hazard lamps flash once and any open windows automatically close.

These features can be customized through the Infotainment System.

See *Remote Control* ⇨ 20 and *Central Locking System* ⇨ 21.

Remote Vehicle Start

If equipped with this feature, the engine can be started from outside the vehicle.

Starting the Vehicle



1. Aim the RKE transmitter at the vehicle.
2. Press and release .
3. Immediately after completing Step 2, press and hold  for at least four seconds or until the turn signal lamps flash.

When the engine starts, the parking lamps will turn on and remain on as long as the engine is running. The doors will be locked and the climate control system may come on.

The engine will continue to run for 10 minutes. Repeat the steps for a 10-minute time extension. Remote start can be extended only once.

Canceling a Remote Start

To cancel a remote start, do one of the following:

- Aim the RKE transmitter at the vehicle and press and hold  until the parking lamps turn off.
- Turn on the hazard warning flashers.
- Turn the vehicle on and then off.

See *Remote Vehicle Start* ⇨ 18.

Seat Adjustment

Seat Positioning

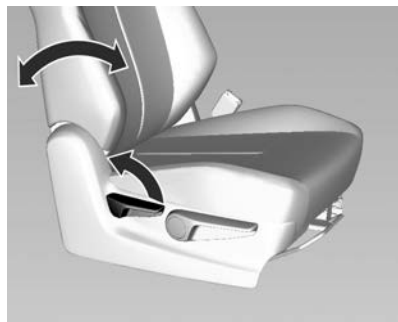


1. Move the seat forwards or backwards by lifting the handle at the front and sliding the seat.
2. Release the handle to engage the latch.

Try to move the seat back and forth to ensure the seat is locked in place.

See *Seat Adjustment* ⇨ 33.

Seat Backrests



1. Recline the seatback by pulling the lever.
2. Adjust the angle and release the lever.
3. Allow the seat to engage.

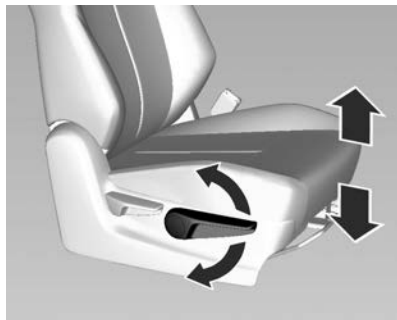
Note

Do not lean on the seat when adjusting.

See *Seat Adjustment* ⇨ 33.

Seat Height

The vehicle may have seat height adjustment.



- To lower the seat cushion, push the lever down several times.
- To raise the seat cushion, pull the lever up several times.

See *Seat Adjustment* ⇨ 33.

Power Seat Adjustment

Seat Positioning

The vehicle may have power seat adjustment.

Caution
Avoid spilling any liquid near the front seat power switch.



- Move the seat forwards or backwards by sliding the switch.

See *Power Seat Adjustment* ⇨ 35.

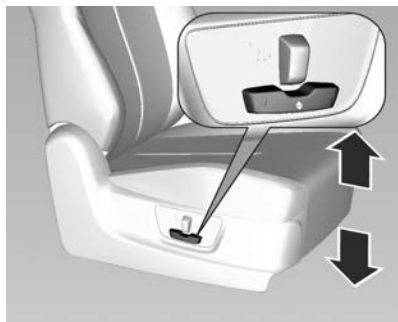
Seat Backrests



- Recline the seatback by sliding the switch forwards or backwards.

See *Power Seat Adjustment* ⇨ 35.

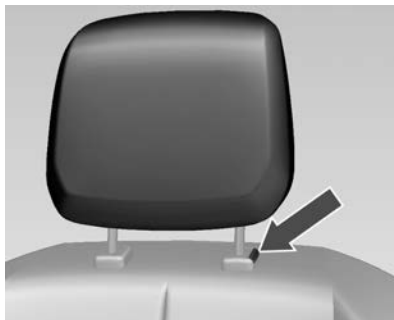
Seat Height



- To lower the seat cushion, push the switch downwards.
- To raise the seat cushion, pull the switch upwards.

See *Power Seat Adjustment* ⇨ 35.

Head Restraint Adjustment



- To raise the head restraint, pull the head restraint upwards.
- To lower the head restraint, press the button and push the head restraint downwards.

See *Head Restraints* ⇨ 32.

Safety Belts

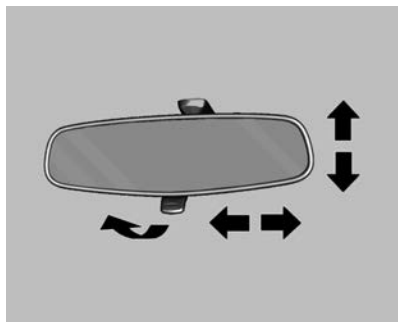


1. Withdraw the belt from the reel.
2. Pull the metal tongue across your body into the buckle, until it clicks into place.
3. Tension the lap belt regularly while driving by tugging the shoulder belt.

See *Seat Belts* ⇨ 37 and *Airbag System* ⇨ 41.

Mirror Adjustment

Interior Mirror



The adjustment is performed by tilting it to a suitable position.

Adjust the lever below the mirror to reduce headlamp glare from following vehicles.

See *Manual Rearview Mirror* ⇨ 26.

Exterior Mirrors

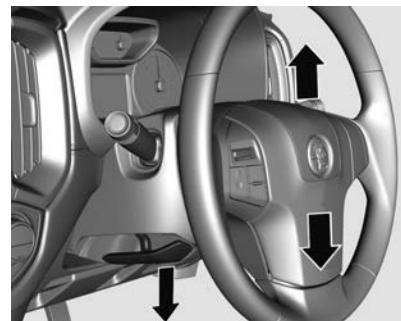


The control for the power mirrors are located on the driver's door.

Select the relevant exterior mirror and adjust it.

See *Power Mirrors* ⇨ 25, *Convex Mirrors* ⇨ 25, or *Folding Mirrors* ⇨ 25.

Steering Wheel Adjustment



1. To unlock, move the lever down.
2. Adjust the steering wheel.
3. To lock, move the lever up.
4. Ensure the steering wheel is locked in position before driving.

See *Steering Wheel Adjustment* ⇨ 62, *Airbag System* ⇨ 41, or *Ignition Positions* ⇨ 184.

Exterior Lighting



 : With automatic light system, turn the switch to activate or deactivate the system, switch turns back to **AUTO**

AUTO : Headlights and exterior lights are switched on and off automatically depending on external lighting conditions

 : Sidelights, number plate lights and instrument panel lamps are illuminated

 : Headlights

See *Exterior Lamp Controls* ⇨ 87.

High Beam/Low Beam



- To flash the headlamps, pull the lever.
- To switch from low to high beam, push the lever.
- To switch to low beam, push again or pull the lever.

See *Headlamp High/Low-Beam Changer* ⇨ 88 and *Flash-to-Pass* ⇨ 88.

Turn and Lane-Change Signals



- Push the lever in the direction the steering wheel is turned.
- A green arrow on the instrument panel flashes when the lamps are in operation.

See *Turn and Lane-Change Signals* ⇨ 89.

Hazard Warning Flashers



- Press  to turn the hazard warning flasher on or off, when the ignition is in any position.

See *Hazard Warning Flashers* ⇨ 89.

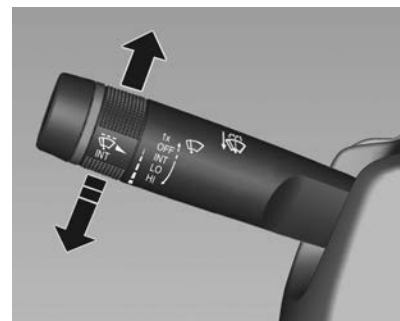
Horn



Press .

Washer and Wiper Systems

Windscreen Wiper



1x : Single wipe

OFF : Off

INT : Intermittent operation

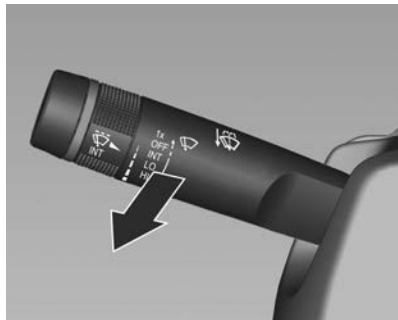
LO : Continuous wipe, slow speed

HI : Continuous wipe, fast speed

For a single wipe when the windscreen wipers are off, move the lever up lightly and release it.

See *Windshield Wiper/Washer* ⇨ 64 and *Wiper Blade Replacement* ⇨ 233.

Windscreen Washer



- Pull the lever towards you to wash the windscreen.

Washer fluid is sprayed onto the windscreen and the wipers operate.

See *Windshield Wiper/Washer* ⇨ 64 and *Washer Fluid* ⇨ 230.

Climate Controls



The climate control panel is located in the centre of the instrument panel.

See *Climate Control Systems* ⇨ 174 or *Electronic Climate Control System* ⇨ 176.

Transmission

Manual Transmission



- When shifting from one gear to another, push the clutch pedal to the floor.
- Do not engage reverse gear while the vehicle is still moving.
- Pause between pressing the clutch pedal and moving into reverse gear.

See *Manual Transmission* ⇨ 191.

Automatic Transmission



P : Park

R : Reverse

N : Neutral

D : Drive

The shift lever can only be moved out of **P** when the ignition is on and the brake pedal is applied.

To engage **P** or **R**, push the release button on the front of the selector lever.

Manual mode: Move the selector lever to position **D**, then push to the left.

+ : higher gear

- : lower gear

See *Automatic Transmission* ⇨ 189 and *Four-Wheel Drive* ⇨ 192.

Parking

- Always apply the parking brake firmly without pressing the release button. Apply as firmly as possible on a downhill slope or uphill gradient. Apply foot brake before applying the parking brake to reduce operating force.
- Switch off the engine and ignition. Turn the ignition key to **LOCK** (0), remove it and turn the steering wheel until the steering wheel lock is felt to engage.

For vehicles with automatic transmission, move the shift lever to **P** position and remove the key.
- If the vehicle is on a level surface or uphill gradient, engage first gear or set the shift lever to **P** before switching off

the ignition. On an uphill gradient, turn the front wheels away from the curb.

If the vehicle is on a downhill slope, engage reverse gear or set the selector lever to **P** before switching off the ignition. Turn the front wheels towards the curb.

- Close the windows.
- Lock the vehicle.
- Activate the anti-theft alarm system, if available, see *Anti-theft Alarm System* ⇨ 24.
- For vehicles with a diesel engine, after running at high engine speeds or with high engine loads, operate the engine briefly at a low load or run in neutral for about 1 to 2 minutes at idle speed before switching off in order to protect the turbocharger.
- For vehicles with a diesel engine, before switching off, do not accelerate.

⚠ Warning

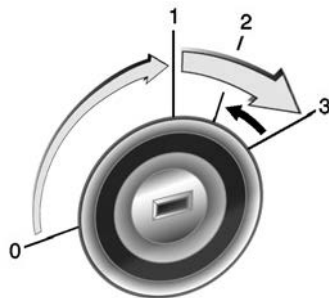
Do not park the vehicle on a flammable surface. The high temperature of the exhaust system could ignite the surface.

See *Keys* ⇨ 17.

Getting Started**Check Before Starting**

- Check that windows, mirrors and lamps are clean.
- Visually check tyre inflation. Check the tyre pressures weekly.
- Ensure that all doors are closed and secured.
- Position your seat for comfortable driving.
- Adjust rear view mirrors.
- Fasten seat belts.
- Check that the warning indicators illuminate when turning the ignition on.

See *Warning Lights, Gauges, and Indicators* ⇨ 66.

Starting the Engine**⚠ Warning**

Do not turn the engine off while the vehicle is moving as there will not be any power assist for brakes or steering.

Never remove the key while the vehicle is moving, as this will lock the steering.

0: (LOCK) The key can only be inserted and removed from this position.

1: (ACC) When the key is in this position, the audio system operates.

2: (ON) Turn the key to this position for preheating, until  goes out.

When the key is in this position, the engine is ready to start and all electrical systems are active.

Do not leave the switch in this position for a long time, unless the engine is running, otherwise the vehicle's battery will discharge.

3: (START) Turn the key to this position and release when the engine is running.

See *Ignition Positions* ⇨ 184, *Manual Transmission* ⇨ 191 and *Automatic Transmission* ⇨ 189.

Keys, Doors, and Windows

Keys and Locks

Keys	17
Remote Vehicle Start	18
Remote Control	20
Manual Door Locks	21
Central Locking System	21
Safety Locks	22

Doors

Rear Doors	23
Tailgate	23

Vehicle Security

Anti-theft Alarm System	24
Immobiliser	24

Exterior Mirrors

Convex Mirrors	25
Power Mirrors	25
Folding Mirrors	25

Interior Mirrors

Manual Rearview Mirror	26
Automatic Dimming Rearview Mirror (If equipped)	27

Windows

Manual Windows	27
Power Windows	27
Heated Rear Window	29
Sun Visors	30

Keys and Locks

Keys

Caution

Do not attach heavy or bulky items to the ignition key.



The key operates all doors and the ignition.

- Press  once to unlock the driver's door.
- Press  twice to unlock all other doors.

The hazard lamps flash twice.

- Press and hold  to automatically open all windows.
- Press  to lock the doors.

The hazard lamps flash once and any open windows automatically close.

These features can be customized through the Infotainment System.

See *Tailgate* ⇨ 23 and *Central Locking System* ⇨ 21.

Foldaway key blade



1. Press button to extend the key blade.
2. To retract the key blade, press the button and fold the blade into the key.

About the keys

- The remote control has a range of up to 20 metres.
- The range depends on the charge of the key battery, on ambient conditions, the key's location and the area between them.
- Take care that no button is pressed unintentionally, especially when the vehicle is out of sight.
- Protect from moisture and high temperatures.

The key buttons may not work if

- More than 20 metres from the vehicle.
- Battery voltage is too low.
See Battery replacement under *Remote Control* ⇨ 20.
- The key buttons are operated repeatedly while not in range of the vehicle.
- The central locking system is operated at frequent intervals.

- The power supply is interrupted for a short time.
- The vehicle is parked near strong radio activity.

Replacement keys

If a key is lost, a replacement can be ordered through any Holden Dealer by quoting the key code number. The number is printed on a detachable tag supplied with the key.

Remote Vehicle Start



If equipped, this feature allows the engine to be started from outside the vehicle.

Ⓚ (Remote Vehicle Start) : This button will be on the RKE transmitter if the vehicle has remote start.

The climate control system will use the previous settings during a remote start. The rear defog may come on during remote start based on cold ambient conditions.

Other conditions can affect the performance of the transmitter. See *Remote Control* ⇨ 20.

Starting the Vehicle

To start the engine using the remote start feature:

1. Aim the RKE transmitter at the vehicle.
2. Press and release .
3. Immediately after completing Step 2, press and hold  for at least four seconds or until the turn signal lamps flash. The turn signal lamps flashing

confirms the request to remote start the vehicle has been received.

When the engine starts, the park lamps will turn on and remain on as long as the engine is running. The doors will be locked and the climate control system may come on.

The engine will continue to run for 10 minutes. Repeat the steps for a 10-minute time extension. Remote start can be extended only once.

If the engine is running when you enter the vehicle, turn the ignition switch ON. If the engine is not running when you enter the vehicle, start the engine normally.

Extending Engine Run Time

For a 10-minute extension, repeat Steps 1–3 while the engine is still running. The remote start can be extended once.

When the remote start is extended, the second 10 minutes will start immediately.

For example, if the engine has been running for five minutes, and 10 minutes are added, the engine will run for a total of 15 minutes.

A maximum of two remote starts, or a single start with an extension, is allowed between ignition cycles.

The vehicle's ignition must be turned on and then back off before the remote start procedure can be used again.

Cancelling a Remote Start

To cancel a remote start, do one of the following:

- Aim the RKE transmitter at the vehicle and press and hold  until the park lamps turn off.
- Turn on the hazard warning flashers.
- Turn the vehicle on and then off.

Conditions in Which Remote Start Will Not Work

The remote vehicle start feature will not operate if:

- The key is in the ignition.
- The bonnet is not closed.
- The hazard warning flashers are on.
- The malfunction indicator lamp is on.
- The engine coolant temperature is too high.
- The oil pressure is low.
- Two remote vehicle starts, or a single remote start with an extension, have already been used.
- The vehicle is not in P (Park).

Remote Control

Battery Replacement

As soon as the range of the remote control reduces, replace the battery:

Replace battery in remote key is also displayed on the instrument panel when the battery requires replacing.



Use CR2032 (or equivalent) battery.

1. Open the cover.
2. Remove the used battery.
3. Install the new battery.

Place the negative side (-) down towards the base.

4. Close the cover.
5. Check the key operation.

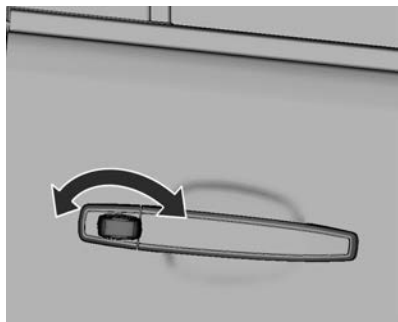
Note

- Batteries do not belong in household waste. Dispose of at an appropriate recycling collection point.
- Avoid dropping the transmitter.
- Do not place heavy objects on the transmitter.
- Keep the transmitter away from water and direct sunlight.
- If the transmitter gets wet, wipe it with a soft cloth.

Caution

Avoid touching the flat surfaces of the battery, the circuit board and other components inside the remote control with bare fingers. Handling will shorten battery life.

Manual Door Locks



- Insert the key into the door lock.
- Turn the key clockwise to lock all doors.
- Turn the key anticlockwise to unlock the driver's door.

Note

Tap the key slot or heat the key if the door does not unlock in cold weather.

Door Lock Snibs



- To lock all doors from the inside, push the door lock snib so it is flush with the door handle.
- To unlock any door from the inside, pull the door lock snib outwards.
- The driver's door lock snib does not operate when the door is open.

Note

Do not operate the switches constantly.

Central Locking System

Doors may be locked and unlocked by pressing buttons on:

- The driver's door armrest
- The key from inside or outside the vehicle

Note

- The driver's door must be closed for the driver's door to lock.
- A horn chirp may sound as a reminder if a door is not closed.
- Pulling on an interior door handle will not unlock a door unless an unlock button has been pressed.

The vehicle may have features that can have customised settings. See *Vehicle Personalisation* ⇨ 85.

Central locking button



Locks and unlocks all doors.

- Press  to lock.
- Press  to unlock.

Safety Locks

The vehicle may have child security rear door locks.



Warning

Use the child security door locks whenever children are occupying the rear seats.

The child security rear door locks prevent the rear doors from being opened from the inside.

Rotate the switch using a key or suitable screwdriver.

To activate:

- Rotate the switch in a clockwise direction.

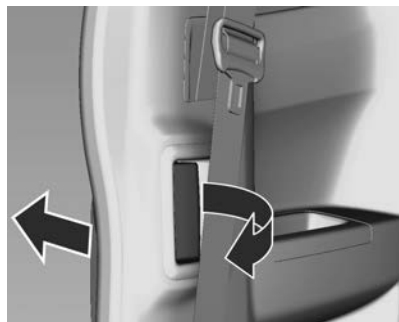
To open a door when the child security rear door lock is activated:

- Open the door from the outside.

Doors

Rear Doors

Space cab



To open a rear door:

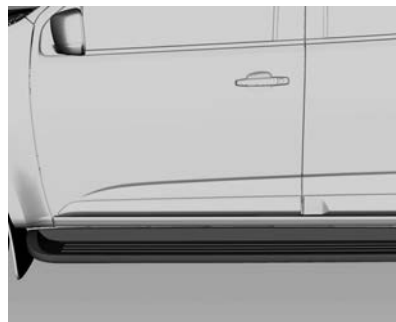
1. Open the front door.
2. Open the rear door by using the handle located on the front edge of the rear door panel.

Note

When closing doors, close the rear doors before closing the front doors.

Side steps

The vehicle may have side steps.



The side steps provide an extra foothold for accessing the front or rear doors.

Tailgate

Locking and unlocking

The vehicle may have a tailgate lock.



- To lock, turn the key anticlockwise until the key is in the vertical position.
- To unlock, turn the key clockwise until the key is in the horizontal position.
Pull the handle upwards to open.
- The key can be removed from either the locked or unlocked positions.

Vehicle Security

Anti-theft Alarm System

The system monitors the doors, ignition and the bonnet.

The system is activated:

- Thirty seconds after locking the vehicle.
- Alternatively, by pressing  on the key a second time.

The system is deactivated by:

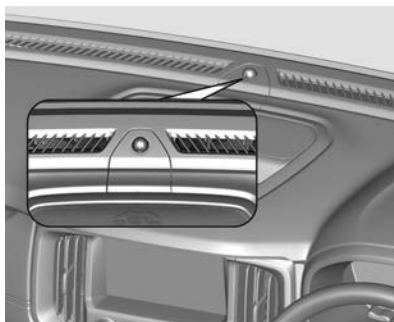
- Pressing  on the key.

Note

- If the driver's door is opened manually, while the alarm is activated, the key needs to be inserted into the ignition within 10 seconds to avoid triggering the alarm. During the 10 seconds, the horn chirps and the hazard warning flashers activate to provide a warning.
- When the alarm is triggered, the horn sounds and the hazard warning flashers activate for 30 seconds.

- If the alarm was triggered during alarm activation, the horn will sound three times and the hazard warning flashers will activate three times, while unlocking the vehicle.

Status LED



The status LED is located on top of the instrument panel.

During the first 30 seconds of system activation:

- LED illuminates (test, arming delay).

- LED flashes quickly (doors or bonnet are not completely closed, or there is a system fault).

When the system is armed:

- LED flashes slowly.

If a fault occurs, contact a Holden Dealer.

Immobiliser

The immobiliser prevents unauthorised engine starting.

- If an invalid key is inserted into the ignition switch/lock, an indicator on the instrument panel will flash.

The vehicle will not start.

- The engine is automatically immobilised after the key is turned to LOCK and has been removed from the ignition switch/lock.
- Only valid ignition keys can be used to start the engine.

- If  flashes or illuminates when the ignition is on, there is a fault in the system. The engine cannot be started. Turn the ignition off and on again.

If the control indicator continues to flash or illuminate, try to start the engine using the spare key.

Have the vehicle checked by a Holden Dealer.

Note

The immobiliser does not lock the doors.

See *Instrument Panel Overview* ⇨ 61.

Exterior Mirrors

Convex Mirrors

The convex exterior mirrors provide a wider view of the road and traffic.



Objects seen in these mirrors are closer than they appear.

Power Mirrors



Adjust the driver's or passenger's side mirror.

L: Left side mirror selected

R: Right side mirror selected

●: No mirrors selected

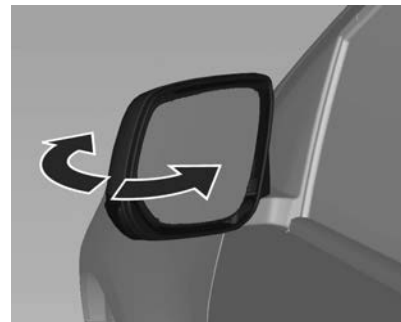
To adjust an exterior mirror:

1. Push the switch to L or R.
2. Press the directional switch to adjust the angle of the mirror.

Folding Mirrors

Manual Folding

The vehicle may have manual folding mirrors.



When the vehicle is parked, the mirrors may be folded flat against the side of the vehicle.

Electric Folding

The vehicle may have electric folding mirrors.



Press the selector switch (L / R switch) to the central position • then push the four-way switch down. Both exterior mirrors will fold.

Press the four-way switch down again – both exterior mirrors return to their original position.

If one mirror has been manually extended or folded, the other mirror can be extended or folded electronically by pressing the fourway switch down.

Note

If both mirrors are folded, push the four-way switch down to guarantee the correct unfold position before driving.

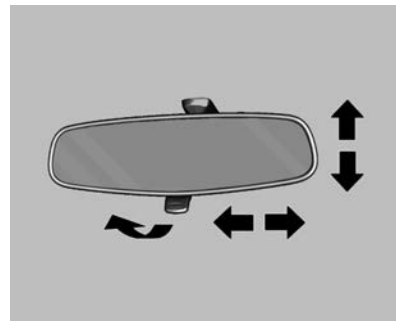
Warning

Always keep your mirrors properly adjusted, and use them while driving to increase your visibility of objects and other vehicles around you. Do not drive while either outside rear view mirror is folded back.

Interior Mirrors

Manual Rearview Mirror

Manual Anti-glare



Caution

The inner rear view mirror can be moved in four directions, so be cautious and avoid the contact with the sun visors. Adjust all mirrors in the most effective position before starting to drive the vehicle.

To reduce headlamp glare from following vehicles, pull the lever on the underside of the mirror housing.

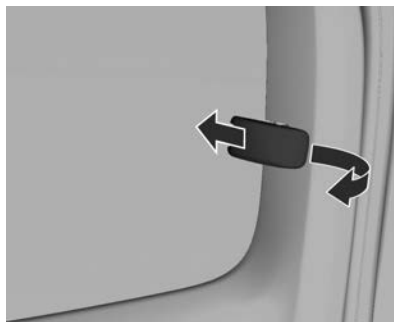
Automatic Dimming Rearview Mirror (If equipped)



Headlamp glare from following vehicles at night is automatically reduced.

Windows

Manual Windows



- The vehicle may have a lever to open the rear side windows.
- Push the lever towards the front of the vehicle, then outwards.

Power Windows

Warning

Take care when operating the power windows. Risk of injury, particularly to children.

If there are children on the rear seats, switch on the child safety system for the power windows.

Be careful when closing the windows. Ensure that nothing becomes trapped in them as they move.

Power windows can be operated.

- With ignition on.
- Within 10 minutes after switching to position 1 – ignition off.

After switching off the ignition, window operation is disabled when any door is opened.



Operate the switch for each respective window by pushing to open or pulling to close. The switch for the driver's window has a light which signals, through illumination, the operation readiness.

Auto Up/Down

To fully open the window automatically, press the switch fully down. To fully close the window automatically, pull the switch fully up. In automatic operation, the window will fully open or close even if you let go of the switch.

To stop the window at the desired position while the window is in automatic operation, pull up or press down and release the switch to the same direction of the movement.

Anti-pinch Function

If the windows encounters any resistance during auto closing, it will stop immediately and open again.

Warning

Anti-pinch function may not operate after consecutive uses. Do not operate the window switch with no purpose.

Override Safety Function

In an emergency, the anti-pinch feature can be overridden in a supervised mode. Hold the window switch all the way up to the second position. The window will rise for as long as the switch is held. Once the switch is released, the express mode is re-activated. In this mode,

the window can still close on an object in its path. Use care when using the override mode.

Warning

Body parts outside the vehicle can be struck by passing objects. Keep all parts of the body inside vehicle.

Children can operate and become entrapped in power windows.

Do not leave your keys or unattended children in your car.

Serious injury or death can occur from misuse of power windows.

Pressure Relief

To reduce front door closing effort, when a front door is opened its respective closed window will automatically lower several centimetres. Once the door is closed, the window will raise automatically.

Should a window fail to close a horn chirp may sound.

Child Safety System for Windows



Press switch  to deactivate the power windows of the rear doors. The other power windows can be operated by switches on the driver's door.

Overload

If the windows are repeatedly operated within short intervals, the window operation is disabled for some time.

Initialising the Power Windows

If the windows cannot be closed automatically (e.g. after disconnecting the vehicle battery), activate the window electronics as follows:

1. Switch the ignition on.
2. Press the button for 2 seconds to move the window down.
3. Press the button to move the window up and close it completely. Keep holding the switch pulled for additional 2 seconds after the window regulator stops at the top position.

Heated Rear Window



Electronic Control

Operated by pressing the  button.



Manual Control

Operated by pressing the  button.

Heating works with the engine running and is switched off automatically after a short time or by pressing the button again.

The **LED** lights up to indicate that it is on.

Caution

Do not use sharp instruments or abrasive window cleaners on your vehicle's rear window.

Do not scratch or damage the defroster wires when you clean or work around the rear window.

Sun Visors



- The sun visors can be folded down or folded outwards over the side window, to prevent glare.

- If the sun visor has a mirror, close the cover when driving.

Warning

Do not place the sun visor in such a position that it reduces visibility of the roadway, traffic or other objects.

Assist grips



The vehicle may have assist grips.

- Assist grips are located above the doors to assist passengers getting in and out of the vehicle.

- The assist grips above each rear door may include a coat hook.

 Warning

Do not hold onto the assist grips while seated in the vehicle.

Seats and Restraints

Head Restraints

Head Restraints 32

Front Seats

Seat Position 33

Seat Adjustment 33

Power Seat Adjustment 35

Heated Front Seats 36

Rear Seats

Rear Seats 36

Seat Belts

Seat Belts 37

Three-Point Seat Belt 39

Safety Belt Use During

Pregnancy 40

Safety Belt Care 40

Replacing Safety Belt System

Parts after a Crash 41

Airbag System

Airbag System 41

Front Airbag System 42

Side Airbag System 43

Curtain Airbag System 44

Replacing Airbag System Parts
after a Crash 45

Child Restraints

Child Restraint Systems 45

Where to Put the Restraint 48

ISOFIX Child Restraint

Systems 49

Top-Tether Child Restraint

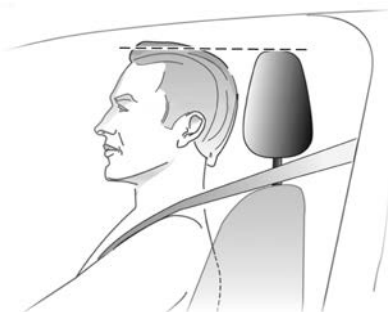
Systems 49

Head Restraints

Warning

This safety feature is not intended to rest the head upon. It is solely for the reduction of whiplash neck movement in an accident involving your vehicle.

The centre of the head restraint should be at eye level, never at neck level.



Height Adjustment



- Pull the head restraint up.
- Press the locking button and push the head restraint down.

Front Seats

Seat Position

Warning

To avoid reducing the effectiveness of seat belts, seatbacks should only be upright or at most semi-reclined when the vehicle is moving.



- Sit centrally in the seat.
- Use the backrest and cushion for support.

- Adjust the seat so that your legs are slightly angled when against the pedals.
- Adjust the backrest angle to easily reach the steering wheel with arms slightly bent. See *Steering Wheel Adjustment* ⇨ 62.
- Maintain contact between shoulders and the backrest when turning the steering wheel.
- Adjust the head restraint. See *Head Restraints* ⇨ 32.
- Slide the passenger seat as far back as possible.

Seat Adjustment

Danger

Do not sit nearer than 25 cm from the steering wheel, to allow safe airbag deployment.

Warning

Do not adjust the driver's seat when the vehicle is moving as the seat could move suddenly causing the driver to lose control.

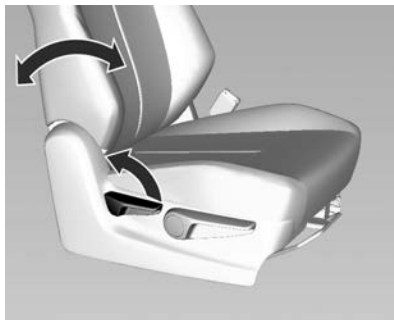
Seat Positioning



1. Move the seat forwards or backwards by lifting the handle at the front and sliding the seat.
2. Release the handle to engage the latch.

Try to move the seat back and forth to ensure the seat is locked in place.

Seat Backrests



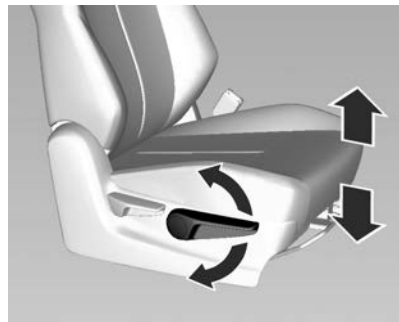
1. Recline the seatback by pulling the lever.
2. Adjust the angle and release the lever.
3. Allow the seat to engage.

Note

Do not lean on the seat when adjusting.

Seat Height

The vehicle may have seat height adjustment.



- To lower the seat cushion, push the lever down several times.
- To raise the seat cushion, pull the lever up several times.

Power Seat Adjustment

Seat Positioning

The vehicle may have power seat adjustment.



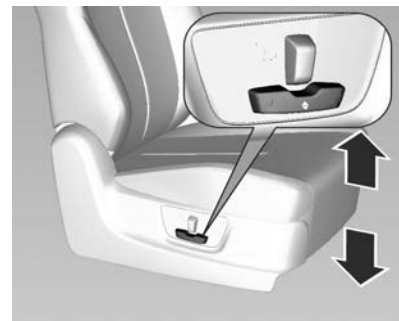
- Move the seat forwards or backwards by sliding the switch.

Seat Backrests



- Recline the seatback by sliding the switch forwards or rearwards.

Seat Height



- To lower the seat cushion, push the switch downwards.
- To raise the seat cushion, pull the switch upwards.

Heated Front Seats

The vehicle may have heated front seats.



To warm the seat:

1. Start the engine.
2. Press the switch .

Low heat setting - 1 LED illuminates

High heat setting - 2 LEDs illuminate

To turn the heater off:

1. Return the switch  to the centre position.
LEDs extinguish

Warning

If you cannot feel temperature change or pain to the skin, the seat heater may cause burns. To reduce the risk of burns, people with such a condition should use care when using the seat heater, especially for long periods of time. Do not place anything on the seat that insulates against heat, such as a blanket, cushion, cover, or similar item. This may cause the seat heater to overheat. An overheated seat heater may cause a burn or may damage the seat.

Do not fit any seat cover (including genuine Holden accessory covers) to heated seats.

Rear Seats

Folding down rear seatbacks

The vehicle may have rear seats.

Danger

Ensure the rear seatbacks are securely in place.

Do not adjust the rear seatback while the vehicle is moving. This could cause damage or injuries to the occupants.

Do not allow passengers to sit on the folded seatbacks while the vehicle is in motion. Unrestrained luggage or passengers on a folded seatback could be thrown within or ejected from the vehicle in a sudden stop or accident.

Caution

Do not trap the seat belt when returning the seatback to the upright position.

To fold the rear seatbacks down:

1. Unbuckle the centre seat belt by inserting the ignition key tip into the slot.
2. Allow the belt to retract slowly.

Caution

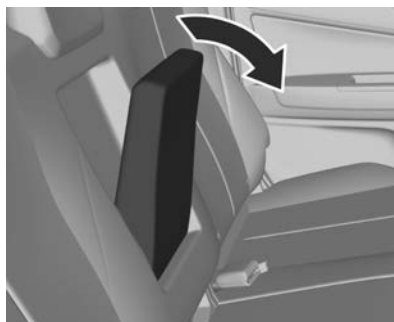
Do not let go of the unbuckled seat belt until it is fully retracted.

3. Crew cab: pull up on either the single centre, or both outboard seatback release straps.
4. Fold the seatback forwards.

To return the seatback to the upright position:

1. Lift the seatback upwards and push firmly back into place to secure.
2. Reconnect and secure the centre seat belt, making sure it is not twisted.

Armrest



Unfold the armrest by pulling downwards from the top.

Seat Belts



Warning

Seat belts are designed to bear upon the bony structure of the body, and should be worn low across the front of the pelvis or the pelvis, chest and shoulders, as applicable; wearing the lap section of the belt across the abdominal area must be avoided.

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

Seat belts should be adjusted as firmly as possible, consistent with comfort, to provide the protection for which they have been designed. A slack belt will greatly reduce the protection afforded to the wearer.

Care should be taken to avoid contamination of the webbing with polishes, oils and chemicals, and particularly battery acid.

Belts should not be worn with straps twisted.

Each belt assembly must only be used by one occupant. It is dangerous to put a belt around a child being carried on the occupant's lap.

No modifications or additions should be made by the user which will either prevent the seat belt adjusting devices from operating to remove slack,

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

or prevent the seat belt assembly from being adjusted to remove slack.

The belts lock during heavy acceleration or deceleration for the safety of the occupants.

Note

Make sure that the belts are neither damaged by shoes or sharp-edged objects or trapped. Prevent dirt from getting into the belt retractors.

Belt Force Limiters

On front seat three point belts, stress on the body is reduced by the gradual release of the belt during a collision.

Belt Tensioners

In the event of a front, side or rear collision of a certain severity, the driver's and/or front passenger's three point seat belts are tightened.

 Warning

Incorrect handling (e.g. removal or fitting of belts or belt buckles) can deploy the belt tensioners with risk of injury.

- When the belt tensioners have been deployed,  illuminates on the instrument panel. See *Safety Belt Reminders* ⇨ 69.
- Deployed belt tensioners must be replaced.
- Belt tensioners are only triggered once.

 Warning

Do not attach or install objects that may interfere with the operation of the belt tensioners.

Do not make any modifications to belt tensioner components.

Three-Point Seat Belt

Fitting



Withdraw the belt from the reel, guide it untwisted across the body and engage the latch plate in the buckle. Tension the lap belt regularly while driving by tugging the shoulder belt.

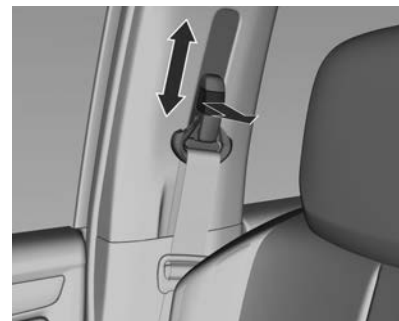


Loose or bulky clothing hinders the belt from fitting snugly. Do not place objects such as handbags or mobile phones between the belt and your body.

Danger

The belt must not rest against hard or fragile objects in the pockets of your clothing.

Height Adjustment



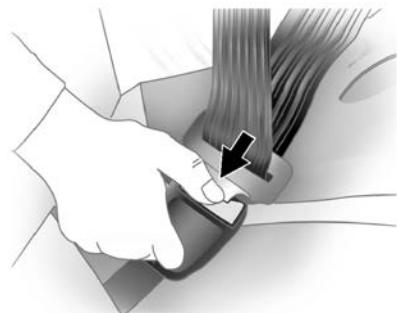
1. Pull the belt out slightly.
2. Pull the button.
3. Adjust height and engage.

Warning

Adjust the height so that the belt lies across the shoulder. It must not lie across the throat or upper arm.

Do not adjust while driving.

Removing



To release the belt, press the red button on the belt buckle.

The belt will automatically return to its original position, if required pull the buckle downward and then release it, so that the belt will be fully retracted.

Safety Belt Use During Pregnancy

Warning

The lap belt must be positioned as low as possible across the pelvis to prevent pressure on the abdomen.

Seat belts work for everyone, including pregnant women. Like all occupants, they are more likely to be seriously injured if they do not wear a seat belt.

A pregnant woman should wear a three point belt with the lap portion of the belt worn as low as possible below the rounding of their stomach, throughout the pregnancy.

Safety Belt Care

Seat Belts should be properly cared for and maintained.

Do not make any changes to the seat belt system.

Verify that the belts have no sign of deterioration or have not been jammed by a sharp object.

Seat Belt hardware should be kept dry and free of dust or debris. As necessary, exterior hard surfaces and seat belt webbing may be lightly cleaned with mild soap and water. Ensure there is not excessive dust or debris in the mechanism. If dust or debris exists in the system please see the dealer. Parts may need to be replaced to ensure proper functionality of the system.

Warning

Care should be taken to avoid contamination of the webbing with polishes, oils and chemicals, and particularly battery acid.

Caution

- The complete belt system should be inspected and verified by a technician on a regular basis.
- The seat belt, which was exposed to an accident, has to be replaced by a new one.

Replacing Safety Belt System Parts after a Crash

Warning

It is essential to replace the entire assembly after it has been worn in a severe impact even if damage to the assembly is not obvious.

Airbag System

When deployed, airbags inflate within milliseconds. They also deflate so quickly that it is often unnoticeable during the collision.

Danger

Do not make any modifications to the airbag system.

The driver should sit back as far as possible while still maintaining control of the vehicle. Sitting too close to the airbag can cause death or serious injury when it inflates.

Always wear a seat belt.

Warning

WARNING – EXTREME HAZARD!

Do not use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an airbag in front of it!

The child could be seriously injured if the airbag inflates, as the child's head would be very close to the inflating airbag.

Remember that it is safest for children to be seated in the rear seats. See *Child Restraint Systems* ⇨ 45.

Warning

Airbags are part of the supplemental restraint system (SRS) as they assist, but do not replace seat belts. Airbags do not deploy in every accident. Various factors dictate whether they

(Continued)

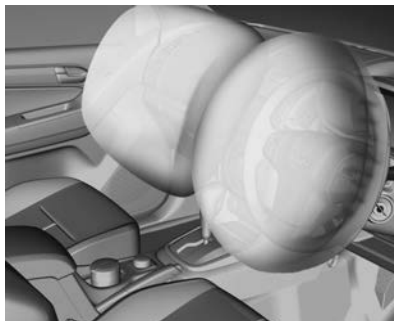
Warning (Continued)

deploy including speed, angle of collision and object hit. Airbags are not designed to inflate if the vehicle is hit from the rear or is involved in a rollover. Seat belts must be worn by all passengers whenever the vehicle is moving.

Airbags inflate with great force. If you are too close to an inflating airbag it may cause injury.

Seat belts help keep you in position for airbag inflation in the event of a collision.

See *Airbag and Seat Belt Tensioner Light* ⇨ 70.

Front Airbag System

The front airbag system consists of one airbag in the steering wheel, one in the instrument panel on the passenger's side and a knee airbag in the lower part of the driver's side instrument panel.

These can be identified by the word **AIRBAG**.

⚠ Warning

The horn pad must not be covered with adhesive or any other material.

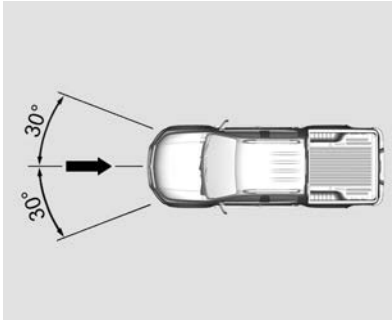
The driver should adjust the seat as far rearward as possible while still maintaining control of the vehicle.

⚠ Warning

Do not place any objects on or over the instrument panel or between an airbag and yourself.

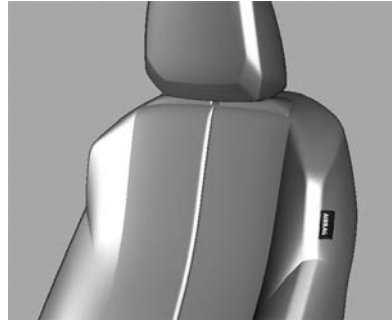
Do not hang anything from the sun visor or mirror.

Passengers must not rest their feet on the instrument panel.



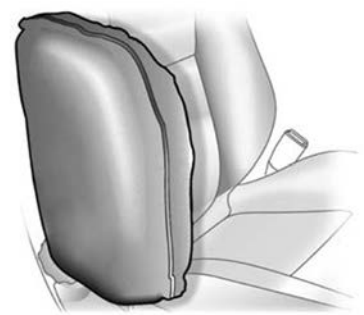
Front airbags will inflate in certain severe frontal or near frontal impacts. Front airbags are not designed to inflate if the vehicle is struck from the side, rear or in rollovers. Always wear a seat belt.

Side Airbag System



The vehicle may have Side Impact Airbags (SIAB) that are stored in the sides of the front seats, the side closest to the door.

SIAB are identified by the labels with the words **SRS AIRBAG** on the seatback.



SIAB deploy in most, but not all, severe side impacts.

Because there is limited time available to detect some side impacts, it is not possible to deploy the SIAB in all serious accidents.

A SIAB will deploy in certain severe side impacts. SIAB are not designed to inflate if the vehicle is struck from the front, rear, or in rollovers. Always wear a seat belt.

Warning

Do not fit unauthorised seat covers as they may impair the deployment of the Side Impact Airbags (SIAB).

Do not position your body or any object (including pillows) between front seats and doors.

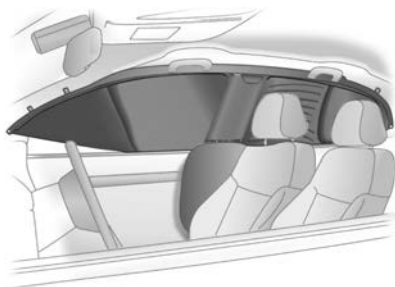
Do not lean on, or sleep against, the door. Always sit centrally in the seat.

Always wear a seat belt.

Curtain Airbag System



- Curtain airbags are stored in the roof on each side of the vehicle.
- They can be identified by the word **AIRBAG** on the roof pillars.



- The curtain airbags deploy in most, but not all severe side impacts.
- The risk of injury to the head in the event of a side impact is considerably reduced.

Warning

Do not position your body or any object (including pillows) in the area in which the airbag inflates.

There must be no objects in the area in which the airbag inflates.

Refer to the illustration.

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

Use the hooks above the doors only to hang up light articles of clothing.

Do not place any objects in the pockets of the hanging items.

Do not hold onto the assist grips (above the doors) while seated in the vehicle.

Do not lean on, or sleep against the front or rear doors. Always sit centrally in the seat.

Always wear a seat belt.

Replacing Airbag System Parts after a Crash**Note**

After an accident where airbags have deployed, the systems, associated parts and hardware must be checked and replaced as required.

Seats, associated parts and hardware must also be checked and replaced as required.

The airbag system should also be inspected after an accident if:

- The instrument panel area or steering wheel is scratched, cracked or damaged.
- The front seats and upholstery are damaged.
- The headliner or trim panels are damaged.

It is recommended that this work be carried out by a Holden Dealer or approved repairer.

Child Restraints**Child Restraint Systems** **Warning****WARNING – EXTREME HAZARD!**

Do not use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an airbag in front of it!

The child could be seriously injured if the airbag inflates, as the child's head would be very close to the inflating airbag.

Remember that it is safest for children to be seated in the rear seats.



Do not use a child restraint on the front passenger's seat. These vehicles are NOT fitted with child restraint anchorage points.



This manual provides you with general information concerning child restraints only.

The driver is required by law to ensure that passengers are suitably restrained. In most States and Territories of Australia and New Zealand, specific laws may exist which require children to be seated in approved child restraints and/or in certain locations within the vehicle.

Holden strongly recommends that you refer to your specific State or Territory regulations to determine which child restraint and seat location is suitable for your child.



Always ensure that the seat belt fits firmly around the child restraint, as applicable to the type of restraint used.

If a child cannot see out of the window, do not raise him/her by means of an ordinary cushion. It will not stay in place in a collision and the child can slip out of the straps and become entangled.

Child restraint seat belt locking feature

(Crew cab)

The rear seat belts have a child restraint locking feature.

When engaged, this feature prevents the seat belt from being loosened without releasing the buckle.

To engage:

1. Clip the metal tongue into the buckle.

2. Pull the shoulder belt all the way out of the retractor to set the lock. When the retractor lock is set, the belt can be tightened but not pulled out of the retractor.
3. To tighten the belt around the installed child seat, push down on the child restraint, pull the shoulder portion of the belt to tighten the lap portion of the belt and feed the shoulder belt back into the retractor.
4. Try to pull the belt out of the retractor to make sure the retractor is locked. If the retractor is not locked, repeat Steps 2 to 4.
5. To remove, press the release button on the buckle and allow the belt to fully retract.

Selecting the right system

Infants

Rearward facing infant capsules are designed so that in the event of a collision, impact forces will be evenly spread over the baby's back, with minimal jarring to the vulnerable head and neck area.

Young children

Forward facing child seats are for use when the child is able to sit and easily hold their head upright.

Booster seats



Booster seats are for when children outgrow a typical forward facing child seat, but are still too small for three point seat belts.

Warning

Always move the passenger's seat as far back as it will go before installing a booster seat. This locates the child as far from the passenger's airbag as possible.

Remember that it is safest for children to be seated in the rear seats.

Older children



A child should use a normal three point seat belt only when:

- They can sit against the back of the rear seat with knees bent comfortably at the edge of the seat.
- The lap belt rests low and snug across the hips, not across the stomach.
- The sash belt is centred on the shoulder and chest.
- They are able to stay seated like this for the entire trip.

Where to Put the Restraint

The vehicle may have child restraint anchorage points.

Warning

It is safest for children to be seated in the rear seat.

Only child restraints that have clips to attach to the vehicle's anchorage fittings are to be used. Earlier types of child restraints may not attach securely to this type of anchor.

Use only Standards Australia and New Zealand approved child restraints and harnesses. Only purchase a child restraint which carries the appropriate Standards Australia sticker of approval.

Australian States and Territories and New Zealand have laws restricting the seating of children in the front passenger's seat. In most jurisdictions, children under

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

4 years should not be seated in the front passenger's seat. Check your local road safety regulations before seating a child in the front seat.

Where legally allowable, you may install a forward-facing child restraint in the front seat, but always move the passenger's seat as far back as it will go.

Child restraint anchorages are designed to withstand only those loads imposed by correctly fitted child restraints. Under no circumstances are they to be used for adult seat belts, harnesses, or for attaching other items or equipment to the vehicle.

Warning

SPACE CAB

Do not use child restraints on the front and/or rear seats. These vehicles are NOT fitted with child restraint anchorage points.

SINGLE CAB

Do not use a child restraint on the front passenger's seat. These vehicles are NOT fitted with child restraint anchorage points.

Warning

Do not fit a child restraint to a rear folding jump seat or a seat without a child restraint anchorage point.

Note

If unsure about installing a child restraint, contact an approved restraint fitting station or a Holden Dealer.

ISOFIX Child Restraint Systems

(Crew cab)



Fasten vehicle-approved ISOFIX child restraint systems to the ISOFIX mounting brackets.

Note

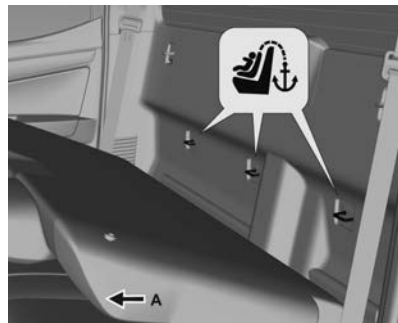
Ensure that seat belt buckles are placed out of the way of the child seat.

ISOFIX mounting brackets are indicated by a label on the seatback, as shown. In addition to the ISOFIX mounting, fasten the

top-tether straps to the top-tether anchorage points. See *Top-Tether Child Restraint Systems* ⇨ 49.

Top-Tether Child Restraint Systems

(Crew cab)



A. Front of vehicle

The child restraint tether anchors are located at the rear of the rear seats in line with the three rear seating positions.

Note

Use the child restraint anchors for their designed purpose only.

Child restraint installation

When using a child restraint, read the installation instructions supplied with the child restraint and follow the directions for fitment carefully.

The child restraint system should be secured in conjunction with the vehicle's seat belt.

Secure the child in the restraint in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

If unsure about installing a child restraint anchor fitting, contact an approved restraint fitting station or a Holden Dealer.

Storage

Storage Compartments

Instrument Panel Storage	51
Glove Box	52
Cupholders	52
Sunglasses Storage	53
Underseat Storage	53
Armrest Storage	53

Luggage/Load Locations

Boot	54
------------	----

Additional Storage Features

Tonneau Cover	55
---------------------	----

Roof Rack System

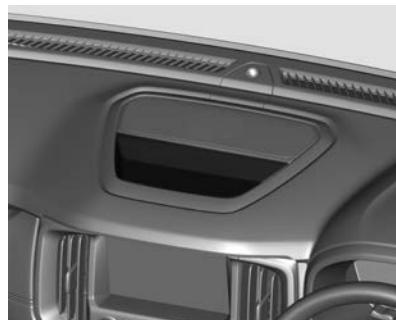
Roof Rack System	59
------------------------	----

Information on Loading the Vehicle

Information on Loading the Vehicle	59
--	----

Storage Compartments

Instrument Panel Storage

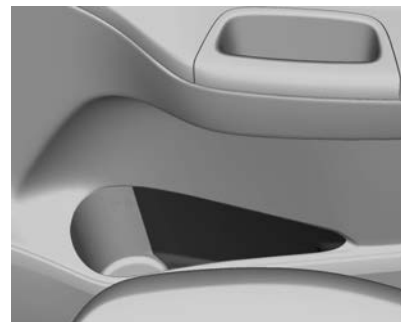


Instrument panel upper storage.

Caution

Do not leave glasses, CDs, CD cases or flammable items, e.g. cigarette lighter, in the tray when the vehicle is parked in direct sun exposure or at high ambient temperatures as the tray may become very hot.

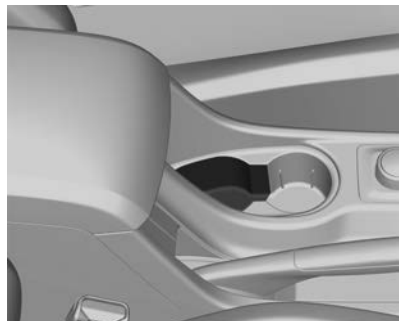
Front Storage



A storage compartment is located within each door.



A bottle holder is located at the front of the door storage compartment.



The vehicle may have a storage compartment located between the front seats.

Glove Box



To open, pull the handle.

Warning

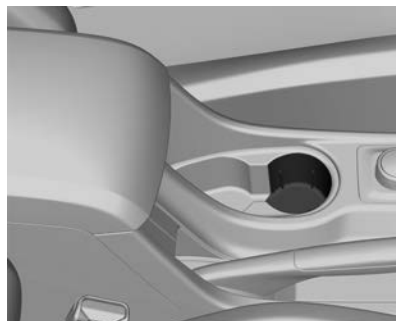
To reduce the risk of injury in an accident or a sudden stop, always keep the glovebox door closed while driving.

Cupholders

Warning

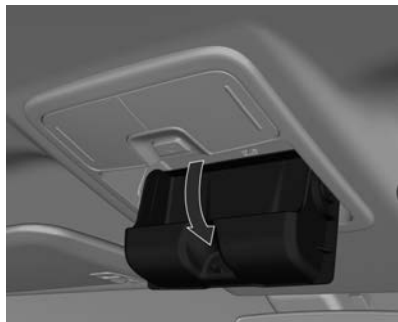
To avoid scalding, never place hot drinks in the cup holders.

Do not place uncovered containers of liquid in the cup holder while the vehicle is in motion.



The vehicle may have cupholders located in the centre console, between the front seats.

Sunglasses Storage



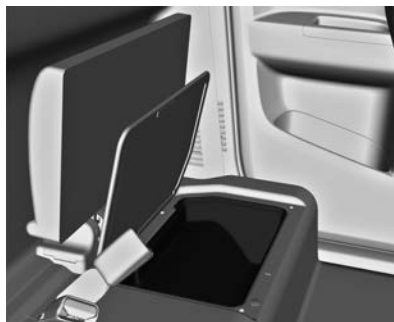
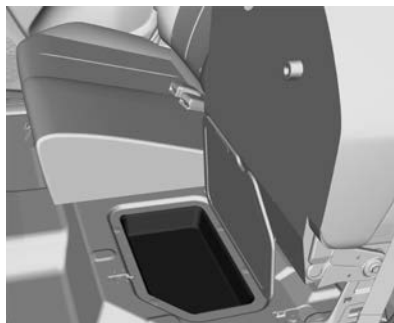
To open : Push the rear part of the cover.

To close : Pull up cover and push it until it latches into place.

Do not use it to storing heavy objects.

Underseat Storage

The vehicle may have rear seat storage compartments.



1. To access, lift the seat cushion.
2. To open the storage box, lift the lid.

Armrest Storage



Press the latch and lift the armrest lid upward.

Luggage/Load Locations

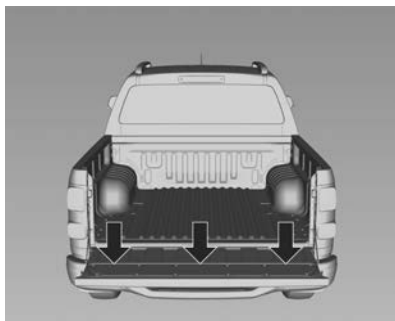
Boot

Tailgate



- To open, pull the centre handle and lower the tailgate.
- To close, raise the tailgate and press the upper sides until it engages.

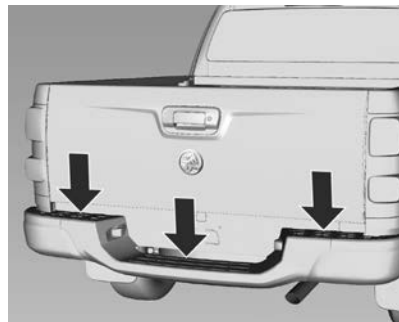
Load Limit on the Tailgate



To avoid damage to the tailgate, limit the load placed on it:

- Load placed in a single concentrated area: 100 kg
- Load which is evenly distributed: 150 kg

Load Limit on the Rear Bumper



The maximum load on the rear bumper is 100 kg.

Additional Storage Features

Tonneau Cover

Soft Tonneau Cover

The vehicle may have a soft tonneau cover.

The Tonneau Cover is used to PARTIALLY protect the load compartment and the items inside of it from rain or dirt.

The cover is made of flexible material to facilitate handling, opening and closing.

For cleaning, use only water, mild soap, and a sponge or flannel. Avoid using self-shine products (silicone etc.).

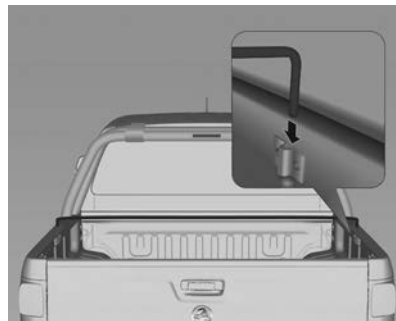
Caution

Never use chemical or abrasive products for cleaning the tonneau cover.

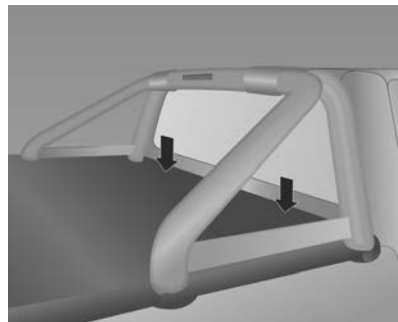
After assembling the tonneau cover set, follow the procedure below for installing:

There are two different types of soft tonneau cover with different installation procedures.

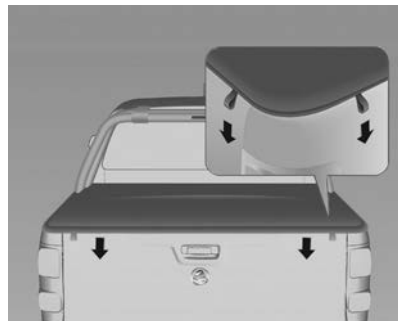
Installation (Tonneau cover 1):



1. Slide the bow through the tonneau bow support bracket.
2. Place the tonneau cover roughly in position with the tags positioned at the sides and rear of the vehicle.



3. Push down along the front edge of the cover until it is secure.



- Starting from the rear, use the finger loops to pull the cover's plastic strip over the slot provided around the top edge of the load area.
- Push down with your hands to smooth the rear strip into place along the slot.
- After the cover is attached at the rear, fit along both sides beginning at the front of the vehicle.
- Where a sports bar is fitted, wrap the velcro strips around the sports bar on each side and attach.

Note

The cover may be tight to fit when new.

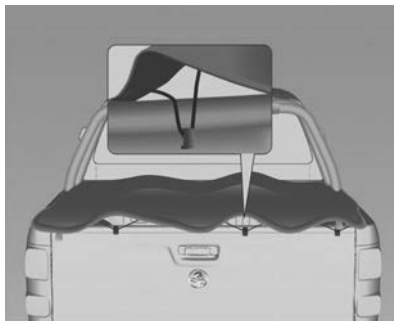
Removal:

- Using the finger loops provided, remove the cover by pulling the loops out and up.
- From underneath the cover, remove the bar on one side, by pushing it towards the front of the vehicle and tilting down.

The other end of the bar will follow.

- For storage, fold the cover, ensuring the plastic sides are not bent.
- Place in a secure location to prevent damage to the cover.

Fitting the Tonneau Cover with High Loads



- Remove the bow if required.
- Attach the front of the cover. See Soft Tonneau Cover.
- Lay the remainder of the cover roughly in position.

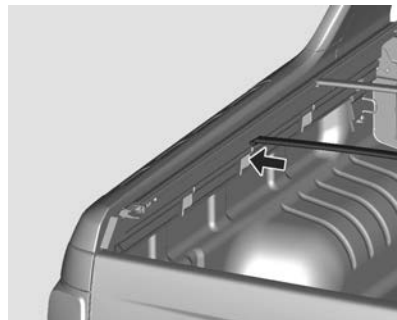
- Underneath the cover there is a cord with attaching clips.

Working around the vehicle, place the clips in the slot provided.

- To remove the cover, pull the clips out and up.

Installation (Tonneau cover 2):

- Place one side of the rear cross member into the inner side of the rail.



- Place the other end of the rear cross member into the rail. Align the cross member ends with the existing labels at the top of the rail.

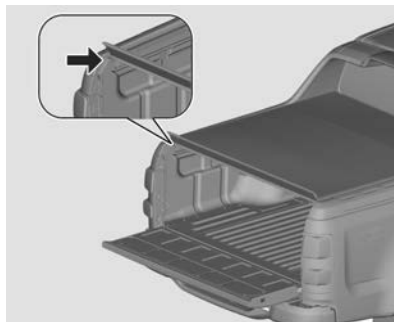
3. Repeat the procedure above for installing the front cross member.

Caution

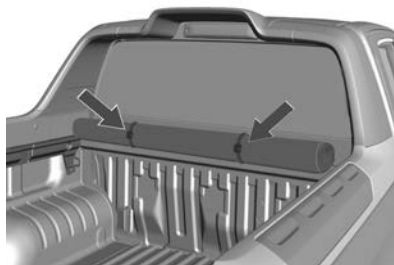
Never use the tonneau cover without the cross members. It provides support for the stretch cover when the vehicle is moving and prevent water accumulation on top of the cover.

Caution

Never put weight on the cross members or on any point of the tonneau cover.



4. Stretch the tonneau cover on the load compartment, fitting the rear beam in to the side rail support without locking it.



If you use the load compartment with the tonneau cover open, first roll up the tonneau cover and then secure with the straps.

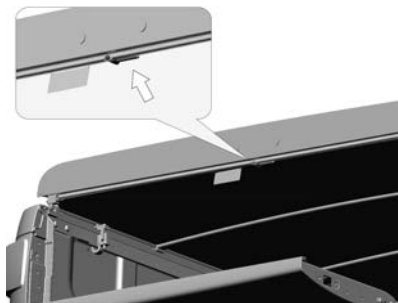
5. Attach the flexible sides of the tonneau cover in to the side rail support.
6. Lock the tonneau cover bearings to the rail bearings. After that, apply downward pressure with your hand until it locks.

Caution

Make sure that both sides of the tonneau cover are fastened to the bearings and rail before locking, in order to avoid damage.

Caution

Before closing the tailgate, make sure the vehicle keys are not inside of the load compartment.



In order to open the tonneau cover, lower the tailgate and pull the release lever on the underside of the tonneau cover down.

Caution

When opening the cover, do not move the lever to the side, only down.

Caution

Lubricate the tonneau cover locking pin monthly.

Caution

When locking or unlocking the tonneau cover, operate the lever gently.

Caution

Do not use the Sport Bar as a support for bracing the load (if equipped).

Caution

The tonneau cover warranty does not apply in the following cases:

- Damage from collision.
- Damage from carrying sharp, pointed objects or objects exceeding the vehicle bucket height.
- Misuse of the cover fastening system.

(Continued)

Caution (Continued)

- Use of the cover without being fully closed or properly rolled up and secured with the straps.
- Improper cleaning.
- Improper installation.
- Modification of the original product design or removal of the manufacturing series number.

Roof Rack System

- Distribute the load evenly and secure tightly with straps.
- When carrying loads on the roof rack/ladder rack (elevated load), avoid hard braking, abrupt swerving or sharp steering.

Roof rack/ladder rack elevated loads alter the handling of a vehicle.

Warning

The total elevated load, including the weight of the cross bars, must not exceed 75 kg. Distribute the load evenly.

Note

The weight of the cross bars/ladder racks and the load must be included when calculating the total vehicle load.

Information on Loading the Vehicle

Danger

Do not stack objects higher than the front seats.

Do not allow passengers to sit on the folded seatbacks while the vehicle is in motion. Serious injuries or death can result.

- Place all heavy objects in the load compartment as far forward as possible.
- Secure objects to prevent from sliding or being thrown out.

Movement of heavy objects in the load compartment may change the handling of the vehicle.

- Distribute load weight evenly.
- Adjust the tyre pressures and vehicle speed according to the load conditions. Check and retighten the straps frequently.

See *Tyre Pressure* ⇨ 270.

- Place heavier objects at the bottom.
- Do not drive with the tailgate open.
- Under no circumstances should people or animals be in the load compartment while the vehicle is moving.
- Do not exceed the maximum load weights.

See *Vehicle Weight* ⇨ 268.

- Do not place any objects on the instrument panel.
- Ensure the backrests are securely engaged.
- Do not place unsecured objects in the passenger compartment.

Instruments and Controls

Instrument Panel Overview

Instrument Panel Overview	61
---------------------------	----

Controls

Steering Wheel Adjustment	62
Steering Wheel Controls	63
Horn	63
Windshield Wiper/Washer	64
Power Outlets	65

Warning Lights, Gauges, and Indicators

Warning Lights, Gauges, and Indicators	66
Speedometer	66
Odometer	67
Trip Odometer	67
Tachometer	67
Fuel Gauge	67
Engine Coolant Temperature Gauge	68
Turn Signal	68
Safety Belt Reminders	69
Airbag and Seat Belt Tensioner Light	70
Charging System Light	70

Malfunction Indicator Lamp	70
Brake and Clutch System Warning Light	70
Antilock Brake System (ABS) Warning Light	71
Upshift light	71
Four-Wheel-Drive Light	71
Descent Control System	72
Lane Departure Warning (LDW) Light	72
Vehicle Ahead Indicator	72
Electronic Stability Control (ESC) Indicator Light	72
Electronic Stability Control (ESC) Off Light	72
Traction Control System Warning Light	73
Traction Control System (TCS) Off Light	73
Pre-Heat Light	73
Tire Pressure Monitoring System Light	73
Engine Oil Pressure Light	74
Low Fuel Warning Light	74
Immobiliser Light	74
High-Beam On Light	74
Front Fog Lamp Light	74
Rear Fog Light (If equipped)	75
Lamps On Reminder	75
Cruise Control Light	75

Trailer Indicator Light (If equipped)	75
---------------------------------------	----

Information Displays

Driver Information Centre (DIC)	75
---------------------------------	----

Vehicle Messages

Vehicle Messages	76
Warning Chimes	76
Battery Voltage and Charging Messages	77
Brake System Messages	77
Cruise Control Messages	77
Door Ajar Messages	77
Engine Cooling System Messages	78
Engine Oil Messages	78
Engine Power Messages	78
Fuel System Messages	78
Diesel Particulate Filter Messages	78
Key and Lock Messages	79
Lamp Messages	79
Object Detection System Messages	79
Ride Control System Messages	79
Airbag System Messages	80
Anti-theft Alarm System Messages	80

Service Vehicle Messages	80
Steering System Messages	80
Tyre Messages	80
Transmission Messages	81
Vehicle Reminder Messages ...	82
Vehicle Speed Messages	82

Trip Computer

Trip Computer	83
---------------------	----

Vehicle Personalisation

Vehicle Personalisation	85
-------------------------------	----

Instrument Panel Overview



Note

Not all indicators may be available.

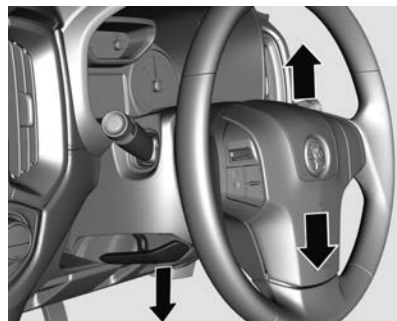
1. Engine Oil Pressure Light ⇨ 74
2. Malfunction Indicator Lamp ⇨ 70
3. Electronic Stability Control (ESC) Off Light ⇨ 72

4. Antilock Brake System (ABS) Warning Light ⇨ 71
5. Cruise Control Light ⇨ 75
6. Safety Belt Reminders ⇨ 69
7. Turn Signal ⇨ 68
8. Electronic Stability Control (ESC) Indicator Light ⇨ 72

- | | |
|--|--|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none">9. <i>Vehicle Ahead Indicator</i> ⇨ 7210. <i>Brake and Clutch System Warning Light</i> ⇨ 7011. <i>Traction Control System Warning Light</i> ⇨ 7312. <i>Safety Belt Reminders</i> ⇨ 6913. <i>Charging System Light</i> ⇨ 7014. <i>Fuel Gauge</i> ⇨ 6715. <i>Engine Coolant Temperature Gauge</i> ⇨ 6816. <i>Driver Information Centre (DIC)</i> ⇨ 7517. <i>Lamps On Reminder</i> ⇨ 7518. <i>Four-Wheel-Drive Light</i> ⇨ 7119. <i>Lane Departure Warning (LDW) Light</i> ⇨ 7220. <i>Descent Control System (DCS)</i> ⇨ 199 | <ul style="list-style-type: none">21. <i>Turn Signal</i> ⇨ 6822. <i>High-Beam On Light</i> ⇨ 7423. <i>Tire Pressure Monitoring System Light</i> ⇨ 7324. <i>Immobiliser Light</i> ⇨ 7425. <i>Airbag and Seat Belt Tensioner Light</i> ⇨ 7026. <i>Trailer Indicator Light (If equipped)</i> ⇨ 7527. <i>Pre-Heat Light</i> ⇨ 7328. <i>Rear Fog Light (If equipped)</i> ⇨ 7529. <i>Front Fog Lamp Light</i> ⇨ 74 |
|--|--|

Controls

Steering Wheel Adjustment



Unlock the lever, adjust the steering wheel, then engage the lever and ensure it is fully locked.

Do not adjust steering wheel unless vehicle is stationary and steering wheel lock has been released.

Steering Wheel Controls



The infotainment system can be operated by the controls on the steering wheel.

See *Steering Wheel Controls* ⇨ 97.



The Cruise Control and the Forward Collision Alert can be operated by the controls on the steering wheel.

See *Cruise Control* ⇨ 201.

See *Forward Collision Alert (FCA) System* ⇨ 203.

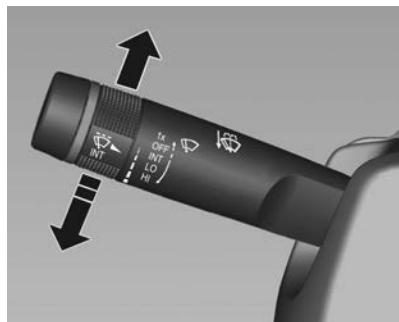
Horn



Press .

Windshield Wiper/Washer

Windscreen Wiper



Caution

Do not operate the windscreen wipers on dry glass or when covered with snow or ice, as this will damage the rubber and scratch the glass.

1x : Single wipe

OFF : Off

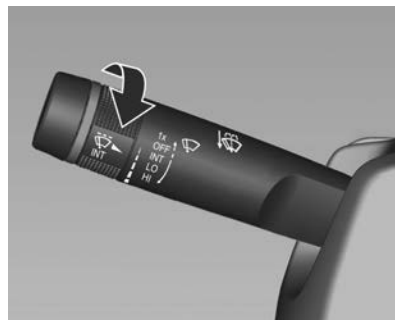
INT : Intermittent operation

LO : Continuous wipe, slow speed

HI : Continuous wipe, fast speed

For a single wipe of the windscreen when the windscreen wipers are off, push the lever upwards.

Adjustable Wiper Interval



During intermittent operation, adjust the wiper interval:

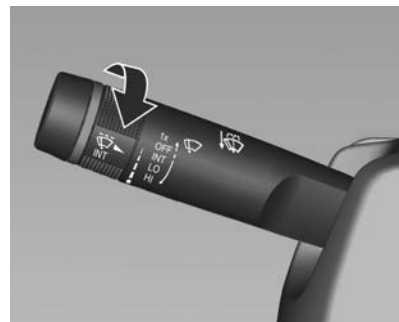
- For frequent intervals, rotate the wheel downwards.
- For longer intervals, rotate the wheel upwards.

Automatic wiping with rain sensor (If equipped)

INT : automatic wiping with rain sensor

The rain sensor detects the amount of water on the windscreen and automatically regulates the frequency of the windscreen wiper.

Adjustable sensitivity of the rain sensor (If equipped)



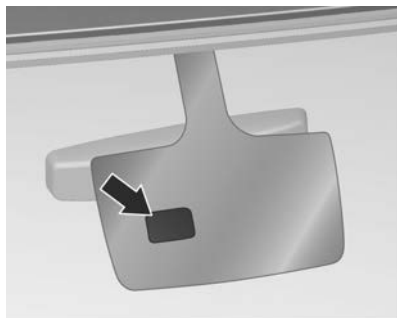
Turn the adjuster wheel to adjust the sensitivity:

Low sensitivity : Turn adjuster wheel upwards

High sensitivity : Turn adjuster wheel downwards

Caution

Switch off the windscreen wiper and automatic operation with rain sensor in car washes.

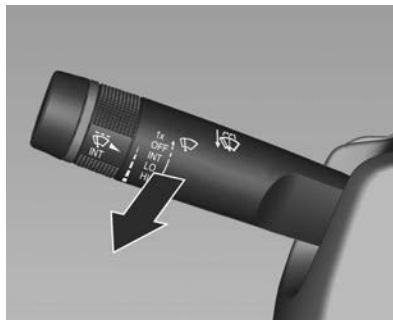


Keep the sensor free from dust, dirt and ice.

If you move the wiper to rain sensor mode or turn the adjuster wheel from low sensitivity to high

sensitivity when the ignition is switched on, the windscreen wipers operate once to check the system.

Windscreen Washer



Pull the lever rearwards to wash the windscreen.

Washer fluid is sprayed onto the windscreen and the wipers operate.

Caution

Do not operate the windscreen washer for more than a few seconds or when the washer fluid reservoir is empty.

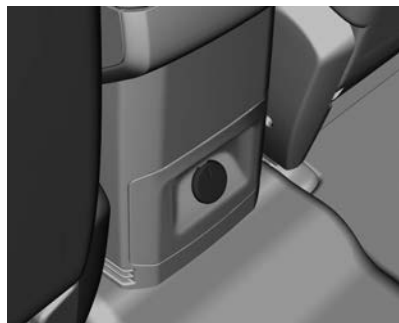
Do not spray washer fluid on the windscreen in freezing weather.

Switch the wipers off when in a car wash.

Power Outlets



The 12V power outlets are located on the front panel.



A 12V power outlet may be located on the back of the front center console.

Note

Quantity and positioning of power outlets depends on vehicle version.

Caution

Do not exceed the maximum power consumption of 120 Watts per power outlet.

With the ignition off and all doors closed, the power outlets will be deactivated after 10 minutes. Additionally, the power outlets are deactivated in case of low battery voltage.

Do not connect any current-delivering accessories, e.g., electrical charging devices or batteries.

Do not damage the sockets by using unsuitable plugs.

Warning Lights, Gauges, and Indicators

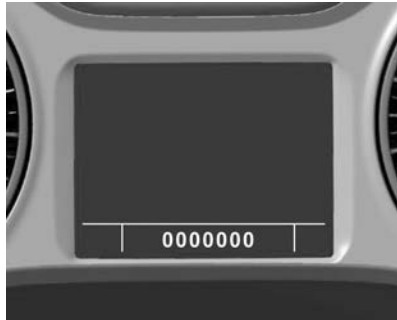
The following warning lights and reminders may appear on the instrument panel.

A chime sounds with most warning lights and indicators.

Speedometer

Shows vehicle speed in kilometres per hour (km/h).

Odometer



Shows distance travelled in kilometres.

Trip Odometer

The Trip display shows the current distance travelled since the last reset of the trip odometer.

See *Trip Computer* ⇨ 83.

Tachometer



Shows engine speed in thousands of revolutions per minute (RPM).

Drive at a low engine speed/range for each gear, as much as possible.

Warning

Do not allow the needle to remain in the warning/red zone.

Fuel Gauge



Shows the level of fuel in the tank.

If the fuel level is low:

-  illuminates.
- A chime sounds.
- A message is displayed. Refuel immediately.

Danger

Before refuelling, stop the vehicle and switch the engine off.

Note

- The arrow on the fuel gauge symbol indicates the side of the vehicle the fuel door is on.
- Never run the tank dry.
- If you operate the ignition switch while refuelling, the fuel gauge may not indicate the correct fuel level.
- On inclines, the fuel gauge may not indicate the correct fuel level due to movement of the fuel in the tank.

Engine Coolant Temperature Gauge



Shows the engine coolant temperature.

Left area : Regular operating temperature not yet reached

Central area : Normal operating temperature

Right area : Temperature too high

If the engine is too hot, the gauge pointer will move toward the red area, a warning chime will activate, and the Driver Information Center will also display a message. Seek the assistance of a Holden Dealer.

See *Driver Information Centre (DIC)* ⇨ 75.

Warning

Do not continue driving with the temperature gauge needle in the red area. The engine is too hot.

Continued operation of an overheated engine will result in severe engine damage. See *Engine Coolant* ⇨ 229.

Turn Signal

- Push the lever in the same direction the steering wheel is turned.
- ⇨⇨ flashes.
⇨⇨ also flashes when the hazard warning is activated.
- If ⇨⇨ flashes quickly, see *Bulb Replacement* ⇨ 233.

See *Fuses* ⇨ 238 and *Turn and Lane-Change Signals* ⇨ 89.

Safety Belt Reminders



 for driver's seat illuminates or flashes red.

When the ignition is switched on, this control indicator is activated and remains active for some seconds, to remind the driver to fasten the seat belt.

Soon after the ignition is switched on or the engine is started, the control indicator begins to flash, and also a chime sounds, for a few seconds. Then the control indicator stops flashing and illuminates until the driver seat belt is fastened.

Additionally, if the driver remains with the seat belt unfastened while the vehicle is moving, after reaching a specific distance or speed, a chime sounds and the control indicator flashes for several seconds.

If the driver seat belt is already fastened, neither the control indicator nor the chime comes on.

See *Seat Belts* ⇨ 37.

If Seat Belt Reminder is active the Rear Parking Assistance chime will not operate.

Passenger Safety Belt Reminder (If equipped)



 2 for passenger's seat illuminates or flashes red.

When the vehicle is started this light flashes and a chime may sound to remind passengers to fasten their seat belt. Then the light stays on solid until the belt is buckled.

This cycle continues several times if the passenger remains or becomes unbuckled while the vehicle is moving.

If the passenger seat belt is buckled, neither the chime nor the light comes on.

The front passenger seat belt warning light and chime may turn on if an object is put on the seat such as a briefcase, handbag, grocery bag, laptop, or other electronic device. To turn off the warning light and/or chime, remove the object from the seat or buckle the seat belt.

Rear Passenger Safety Belt Reminder (If equipped)



 for rear passenger's seat appears on Driver Information Center.

When the ignition is turned on, the symbols will be displayed in the lower part of the DIC. If a rear seat belt is buckled, the corresponding symbol will dim.

Once the vehicle is travelling over 10 km/h for approximately 10 seconds, the symbols will extinguish. If a rear seat belt is unbuckled whilst driving, a chime will sound and the corresponding symbol will flash in the DIC.

Airbag and Seat Belt Tensioner Light

- The  warning light illuminates for a short time when the ignition is turned on to show that the light is working.
- If the  warning light does not illuminate, does not extinguish after few seconds or illuminates while driving, there is a problem with the airbag or belt tensioner system.

Warning

Have any fault in the airbag or belt tensioner system repaired immediately by a Holden Dealer.

See *Seat Belts* ⇨ 37 and *Airbag System* ⇨ 41.

Charging System Light

- The  warning light illuminates for a short time when the ignition is turned on to show that the light is working.
- If the  warning light illuminates while the engine is running, there is a problem with the charging system:
 1. Stop the vehicle and switch off the engine.
 2. Contact a Holden Dealer.

Malfunction Indicator Lamp

- The  warning light illuminates when the ignition is turned on to show that the light is working.

- If the  warning light illuminates or flashes while driving, there is a problem with the emission monitoring system. Contact a Holden Dealer.
- The  warning light may also illuminate to indicate there is a malfunction in the Diesel Particle Filter (DPF). Contact a Holden Dealer.
- To avoid serious damage to the vehicle, reduce vehicle speed, avoid hard acceleration, avoid steep uphill gradients and if towing a trailer, reduce the amount of cargo as soon as possible.

Brake and Clutch System Warning Light

 illuminates red.

Illuminates when the parking brake is applied, if the brake fluid level is too low, or if there is a brake system failure, see *Brake Fluid* ⇨ 230.

⚠ Danger

If the brake system warning light illuminates, check the brake fluid level and contact an authorised dealer immediately.

If the brake fluid level in the reservoir is low, do not drive the vehicle.

This may mean your brakes are not working properly. Driving with malfunctioning brakes can cause personal injuries and damage to your vehicle and other property.

Illuminates after the ignition is switched on if the manual parking brake is applied, see *Parking Brake* ⇨ 197.

If the parking brake has not been fully released and the vehicle is moving, after reaching a certain speed, the chime comes on and the Driver Information Centre also displays a message, see *Driver Information Centre (DIC)* ⇨ 75.

Antilock Brake System (ABS) Warning Light

- The  warning light illuminates for a short time when the ignition is turned on to show that the light is working.

If the light:

- Does not flash or stays on when the ignition key is turned on.
- Remains on while driving.
Carefully stop the vehicle and turn off the engine.
- If both the  and the  warning lights illuminate, there is a problem with both the ABS and the regular brakes.

Contact a Holden Dealer immediately.

Note

- The vehicle's brakes will still operate but without the assistance of the ABS.
- See *Antilock Brake System (ABS)* ⇨ 196.

Upshift light**Upshift Gear**

: For vehicles with manual transmission, the upshift indicator illuminates when a higher gear is recommended for fuel economy, avoiding high engine revolutions. Lower engine revolutions generally allow for greater fuel economy.

⚠ Danger

The recommendation for upshift is only an aid to the driver and not substitute the driver attention. Choosing the right gear is the driver's responsibility and depends on the driving situation, such as overtaking, towing or hilly stretches.

Four-Wheel-Drive Light

 The four-wheel-drive light comes on when the transfer case is shifted into four-wheel drive and the front axle engages.

Some delay between the shifting and the light coming on is normal.

See Four-Wheel Drive.

Descent Control System



 illuminates or flashes green.

Flashes to indicate that the Descent Control (DCS) is activated, reducing the vehicle's speed. This will happen in speeds between approximately 7 km/h and 30 km/h (manual transmission) or approximately 4 km/h and 30 km/h (automatic transmission).

Illuminates after pressing the  button to indicate that the system is enabled if vehicle speed is below than 50 km/h.

See *Descent Control System (DCS)* ⇨ 199.

Lane Departure Warning (LDW) Light

 If equipped, this light, located in the center of the instrument panel, comes on briefly while starting the vehicle.

If it does not come on, have the vehicle serviced.

This light is green if LDW is on and ready to operate.

This light changes to yellow and flashes to indicate that the lane marking has been crossed without using a turn signal in that direction.

See *Lane Departure Warning (LDW)* ⇨ 210.

Vehicle Ahead Indicator

 If equipped, this indicator will display green when a vehicle is detected ahead.

The indicator will display yellow when you are following a detected vehicle ahead much too closely.

See *Forward Collision Alert (FCA) System* ⇨ 203.

Electronic Stability Control (ESC) Indicator Light

- The  warning light illuminates for a short time when the ignition is turned on to show that the light is working.
- The light flashes while driving, to show that the ESC is actively helping the vehicle with road grip and stability.
- If the light illuminates or does not extinguish while driving, contact a Holden Dealer immediately.
- See *Driver Information Centre (DIC)* ⇨ 75 and *Electronic Stability Control (ESC)* ⇨ 198.

Electronic Stability Control (ESC) Off Light

- The  warning light illuminates for a short time when the ignition is turned on to show that the light is working.

- If the light does not illuminate, contact a Holden Dealer.
-  illuminates when the ESC is deactivated.
- See *Driver Information Centre (DIC)* ⇨ 75 and *Electronic Stability Control (ESC)* ⇨ 198.

Traction Control System Warning Light



 illuminates or flashes yellow.

Illuminates

Illuminates for a few seconds after the ignition is switched on. If the system is working normally, the control indicator goes out.

If the indicator does not go out after a few seconds, there is a fault in the system. It is possible to keep driving without Traction Control System (TCS) activated.

Have the cause of the fault fixed by a Holden dealer.

Flashes

During ESC, TCS and/or TSC activation the DIC indicator will flash.

See *Traction Control System (TCS)* ⇨ 198. See *Electronic Stability Control (ESC)* ⇨ 198. See *Trailer Sway Control (TSC)* ⇨ 218

Traction Control System (TCS) Off Light

 illuminates yellow.

Illuminates when the system is deactivated.

See *Traction Control System (TCS)* ⇨ 198.

Pre-Heat Light

- When the ignition key is turned ON,  illuminates and will stay illuminated until the engine is sufficiently warmed.
- The preheating system switches on only if the outside temperature is low.
- See *Starting the Engine* ⇨ 185.

Tire Pressure Monitoring System Light

 For vehicles with the Tyre Pressure Monitor System (TPMS), this light comes on briefly when the engine is started. It provides information about tyre pressures and the TPMS.

When the Light Is On Steady

This indicates that one or more of the tyres are significantly underinflated.

A Driver Information Centre (DIC) tyre pressure message may also display. See *Tyre Messages* ⇨ 80. Stop as soon as possible, and

inflate the tires to the pressure value shown on the Tire and Loading Information label. See *Tyre Pressure* ⇨ 244.

When the Light Flashes First and Then Is On Steady

If the light flashes for about a minute and then stays on, there may be a problem with the TPMS. If the problem is not corrected, the light will come on at every ignition cycle. See *Tyre Pressure Monitor Operation* ⇨ 247.

Engine Oil Pressure Light

- The  warning light illuminates for a short time when the ignition is turned on to show that the light is working.

If the light illuminates while driving:

- The oil pressure is dangerously low.
Stop the vehicle as soon as possible and check the engine oil level.
- See *Engine Oil* ⇨ 226.

- Do not drive the vehicle with the light illuminated. Contact a Holden Dealer.

Caution

Engine damage may result if you keep driving. Do not run the engine. If the oil level is normal, have the system checked by the nearest Holden Dealer.

Low Fuel Warning Light

- The  warning light illuminates for a short time when the ignition is turned on to show that the light is working.
- The light illuminates when the fuel tank is approaching empty. Add fuel as soon as possible.
- If the engine is run to empty, the fuel system must be bled. See *Diesel Fuel System Bleeding* ⇨ 233.
- See Fuel types under *Fuel* ⇨ 212 and *Fuel System Messages* ⇨ 78.

Immobiliser Light

- The  warning light illuminates for a short time when the ignition is turned on to show that the light is working.
- If the light remains on, contact a Holden Dealer.
- See *Immobiliser* ⇨ 24.

High-Beam On Light

The  indicator light illuminates when headlamp high beam is on.

See *Headlamp High/Low-Beam Changer* ⇨ 88.

Front Fog Lamp Light

The vehicle may have front fog lamps.

-  illuminates on the instrument panel when the lamps are in use.
- See *Front Fog Lamps* ⇨ 90.

Rear Fog Light (If equipped)

 illuminates yellow.

It illuminates when the rear fog light is on.

Lamps On Reminder

 illuminates green.

It illuminates when the exterior lights are on, see *Exterior Lamp Controls* ⇨ 87.

Cruise Control Light

The vehicle may have cruise control.

-  illuminates on the instrument panel when the cruise control has been set.
- The light extinguishes when cruise control is turned off.
- See *Cruise Control* ⇨ 201.

Trailer Indicator Light (If equipped)

 Illuminates when the trailer is connected to your vehicle. It will go out when the trailer is disconnected.

Information Displays

Driver Information Centre (DIC)

The Driver Information Centre is located on the instrument cluster. The Driver Information Centre displays information about your vehicle. It also displays warning messages if a system problem is detected.

See *Vehicle Messages* ⇨ 76.

Selecting Functions

The menus and functions can be selected by the buttons on the turn signal lever.



Press the **MENU** button to switch between the menus.

The following menus can be selected:

- Vehicle Pages (Vehicle Information Menu)
- Trip Computer (Trip/Fuel Information Menu)
- ECO Menu (For vehicles equipped with diesel engine)

Use the adjusting knob to scroll through the items in each menu or to set a numeric value.

Press the **SET/CLR** button to select a function or to confirm a message.

See *Trip Computer* ⇨ 83.

Vehicle Messages

Messages are displayed on the DIC or may be audible as a warning chime.

- Not all messages are displayed on all vehicles.
- Some settings can be changed in the personalisation menu.

See *Vehicle Personalisation* ⇨ 85.

Note

Some of the following messages require immediate action to prevent vehicle or engine damage.

Warning Chimes

Warning chimes may sound.

When Starting the Engine or while Driving

- If a seat belt is not fastened
- If a certain speed is exceeded with the parking brake applied
- If a warning message appears in the DIC
- If the parking assist detects an object

- If parking assist is activated
- If the vehicle speed exceeds the adjusted speed value

When the Vehicle is Parked and/or a Door is Opened

- Until the engine starts, with the key in the ignition switch
- When exterior lights are on with the engine off

Battery Voltage and Charging Messages

Battery Saver Active

This message displays when the vehicle detects that the battery voltage is low. The battery saver system may disable some vehicle features for battery saving and a message is displayed. Turn off unnecessary accessories to allow the battery to recharge.

Low Battery

This message displays when the battery voltage is low.

Service Battery Charging System

This message displays when there is a fault in the battery charging system. Contact a Holden Dealer.

Brake System Messages

Brake Fluid Low

- The message is displayed when the brake fluid level is low.
- See *Brake Fluid* ⇨ 230.

Release Parking Brake

- The message is displayed when the parking brake is on.
- Release the parking brake while driving the vehicle.

Hill Start Assist is Active

- The message is displayed when Hill Start Assist (HSA) is active and is preventing rollback when driving off, while on an incline.
- See *Hill Start Assist (HSA)* ⇨ 197.

Reduce Speed for Descent Control System (DCS)

- The message is displayed when Descent Control System (DCS) is active and vehicle speed exceeds 30 km/h.
- See *Descent Control System (DCS)* ⇨ 199.

Cruise Control Messages

Cruise Set to (...) Km/h

This message displays when the cruise control is set and shows the speed it was set to, see *Cruise Control* ⇨ 201.

Door Ajar Messages

Door Open

The message is displayed when one or more doors are open.

Close the doors completely.

Bonnet Open

The message will display when the bonnet is open.

Close the bonnet completely.

Engine Cooling System Messages

Engine Overheated – Idle Engine

- The message displays and a continuous chime sounds if the engine cooling system reaches unsafe temperatures for operation.
- Stop the vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so. Allow the engine to idle for a few seconds, then turn the engine off, to avoid severe damage.
- The message clears when the engine has cooled to a safe operating temperature.

Caution

Engine damage may result if the engine is turned off immediately. Idle for a few seconds, then turn off.

Engine Oil Messages

Change Engine Oil Soon

This message displays when the engine oil needs to be changed. See *Engine Oil* ⇨ 226 for more information.

Engine Power Messages

Engine Power is Reduced

- The message displays when the vehicle's engine power is reduced.

Note

- Although the vehicle may still be drivable, the accelerator input available may be limited, resulting in reduced power.
- Have the problem repaired by a Holden Dealer as soon as possible.

Fuel System Messages

Fuel Level Low

The message displays when the fuel level is low and remains displayed until the fuel tank is filled above the low fuel level.

Water in Fuel – Contact Service

This message displays when the fuel sensor detects water in the diesel fuel. See *Fuel Filter* ⇨ 232 or contact a Holden Dealer.

Diesel Particulate Filter Messages

Diesel Partic Filter is Full Continue Driving

This message will be displayed on the DIC when diesel particulate filter cleaning is required. To clean the filter, continue driving the vehicle until the warning message extinguishes. This may take up to 30 minutes. See *Diesel Particulate Filter* ⇨ 187.

Diesel Partic. Filter is Full Continued Driving Mandatory

If the auto self clean has been interrupted several times, this message may be displayed and a chime may sound. Do not interrupt the cleaning process. Continue driving the vehicle until the warning message extinguishes.

If the SVS (Service Vehicle Soon) message turns on, the self-cleaning process is not feasible. Contact a dealer soon.

If the diesel particulate filter is not cleaned soon, the MIL (Malfunction Indicator Lamp) will illuminate and the 'Engine Power is Reduced' message will be displayed. Vehicle performance will be limited.

See *Diesel Particulate Filter* ⇨ 187, *Engine Power Messages* ⇨ 78 and *Malfunction Indicator Lamp* ⇨ 70.

Key and Lock Messages

Replace Battery in Remote Key

This message displays when the battery in the Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) transmitter needs to be replaced.

Lamp Messages

Check Brake Lamps

This message displays if a brake bulb needs to be replaced.

Object Detection System Messages

Park Assist Off

This message displays when the Parking Assist system has been turned off or when there is a temporary condition causing the system to be disabled.

Service Parking Assist

This message displays if there is a problem with the Parking Assist system. Do not use this system to help you park. See your dealer for service.

Ride Control System Messages

Service ESC

This message displays if there is a problem with the Electronic Stability Control and/or Traction Control system. Contact a Holden Dealer.

ESC OFF

This message displays when the Electronic Stability Control system has been switched off manually by pressing  on the instrument panel.

Traction Control ON

This message displays when the Traction Control (TC) system has been switched on manually by pressing  on the instrument panel.

Traction Control OFF

This message displays when the Traction Control (TC) system has been switched off manually by pressing  on the instrument panel.

Airbag System Messages

Service Airbag

This message displays if there is a problem with the airbag system. Contact a Holden Dealer.

Anti-theft Alarm System Messages

Theft Attempted

This message displays if a theft has been attempted.

While the ignition is on, press **MENU** to clear the message. See *Vehicle Personalisation* ⇨ 85 and *Anti-theft Alarm System* ⇨ 24.

Service Theft Deterrent System

This message displays if there is a problem with the vehicle security system. Contact a Holden Dealer.

Service Vehicle Messages

Service Vehicle Soon

This message will be displayed on the DIC if there is a problem with the vehicle. Take your vehicle to a dealer for service.

Steering System Messages

Steering Assist Is Reduced Drive With Care

This message may display if a problem occurs with the electric power steering system. If this message appears, steering effort may be slightly higher than normal. The vehicle is still safe to drive. Use caution while in reduced assist mode. If this message is persistent or appears repeatedly, take the vehicle to your dealer for service. See *Steering* ⇨ 182.

Service Power Steering

This message displays when there is a problem with electric power steering. Seek the assistance of a Holden Dealership or Authorized Repair Shop. See *Steering* ⇨ 182.

Tyre Messages

Service Tire Monitor System

If equipped with the Tire Pressure Monitor System (TPMS), this message displays if a part on the system is not working properly. The tire pressure light also flashes and then remains on during the same ignition cycle. See *Tire Pressure Monitoring System Light* ⇨ 73. Several conditions may cause this message to appear. See *Tyre Pressure Monitor Operation* ⇨ 247. If the warning comes on and stays on, there may be a problem with the TPMS. See your dealer.

Tire Learning Active

If equipped with the Tire Pressure Monitor System (TPMS), this message displays when the system is relearning the tire positions on your vehicle. The tire positions must be relearned after rotating the tires or after replacing a tire or sensor. See , *Tyre Rotation* ⇨ 249, *Tyre Pressure Monitor System* ⇨ 245, and *Tyre Pressure* ⇨ 244.

Tire Pressure Low Add Air To Tire

If equipped with the Tire Pressure Monitor System (TPMS), this message displays when the pressure in one or more of the vehicle's tires is low. This message also displays with a vehicle picture to indicate the location of the low tire. The low tyre pressure warning light will also come on. See *Tire Pressure Monitoring System Light* ⇨ 73. You can receive more than one tyre pressure message at a time. If a tyre pressure message appears on the DIC, stop as soon as you can. Have the tire pressures checked and set to those shown on the Tire and Loading Information

label. See *Tyre Pressure* ⇨ 244 and *Vehicle Weight* ⇨ 268. The DIC also shows the tyre pressure values. See *Driver Information Centre (DIC)* ⇨ 75.

Transmission Messages

Press Clutch to Start Engine

This message displays when someone attempts to start a manual transmission vehicle without pressing on the clutch pedal.

Service Transmission

This message displays if there is a problem with the automatic transmission. Contact a Holden Dealer.

Shift Denied

For automatic transmission, this message displays when the transmission has not shifted to the selected gear, as the current vehicle speed will result in an engine speed outside the suitable range. See *Manual Mode* ⇨ 190.

Grade Braking Active

For automatic transmission, this message displays when the grade braking feature has been activated while driving on downhill gradients.

The message will only appear the first time the feature activates in an ignition cycle. See *Grade Braking under Automatic Transmission* ⇨ 189.

Transmission Hot – Idle Engine

This message displays when immediate action by the driver is necessary to prevent transmission failure.

Stop the vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so and turn the engine off.

R

R displays when reverse gear is engaged.

Service 4WD

This message displays when there is a problem with the four-wheel drive system. Contact a Holden Dealer.

4WD Shift in Progress

This message displays while the four-wheel drive system is shifting.

For 4WD Low Shift to Neutral

This message displays if a four-wheel drive shift into Four-Wheel Drive Low is requested and the vehicle speed is correct, but the transmission is not in N (Neutral).

To Exit 4WD Low Shift To Neutral

This message displays if a four-wheel drive shift out of Four-Wheel Drive Low is requested and the vehicle speed is correct, but the transmission is not in N (Neutral).

For 4WD Low Slow to 5 km/h

This message displays if a four-wheel drive shift into Four-Wheel Drive Low is requested but the vehicle speed is too high.

To Exit 4WD Low Slow to 5 km/h

This message displays if a four-wheel drive shift out of Four-Wheel Drive Low is requested but the vehicle speed is too high.

Vehicle In 4WD Low

This message displays if the vehicle is driven in Four-Wheel Drive Low for about 10 minutes above 72 km/h.

4WD OFF

This message displays when the four-wheel drive system is temporarily disabled due to overheating. The vehicle will run in two-wheel drive when this message is present. Once the four-wheel drive system cools down, the message turns off and the four-wheel drive system returns to normal operation.

Vehicle Reminder Messages

Ice Possible. Drive with Care

This message displays when icy conditions are possible.

Parking Assist Off

This message displays when the Parking Assist (PA) system has been turned off due to a fault. See *Parking Assist* ⇨ 205.

Service Parking Assist

This message displays if there is a problem with the PA system. Contact a Holden Dealer.

Vehicle Speed Messages

Selected Speed Limit Exceeded

This message displays when the vehicle speed is greater than the adjusted set speed.

Trip Computer

The trip computer is located in the Driver Information Centre.

The trip computer is divided into 3 sections:

- Trip Pages
- Vehicle Pages
- Eco Pages

Trip Pages

To operate the trip computer, press the **MENU** button in the turn signal lever.

Turn the adjusting knob to scroll through the following menu items:

- Digital Speedometer.
- Combined Trip 1 and Trip 2.
- Fuel Range.
- Instantaneous fuel economy.
- Timer.
- Outside Air Temperature.

Some modes can be reset by pressing the **SET/CLR** button.

Digital Speedometer

This mode indicates the vehicle speed.

Combined Trip 1 and Trip 2

This mode indicates the current distance travelled, average vehicle fuel consumption and average vehicle speed since the last reset.

To reset, press and hold the **SET/CLR** button.

Fuel Range

The Fuel Range display shows the approximate distance the vehicle can be driven without refuelling.

The fuel range estimate is based on an average of the vehicle fuel economy over recent driving history and the amount of fuel remaining in the fuel tank.

When the fuel range estimate is less than 64 km, **Fuel Level Low** message will appear on the Driver Information Center and the low fuel control indicator will start to flash.

See *Low Fuel Warning Light* ⇨ 74 and *Driver Information Centre (DIC)* ⇨ 75.

The distance can be different depending on driving patterns.

Note

As an auxiliary device, the trip computer may differ from the actual distance for remaining fuel according to circumstances.

The driving distance for remaining fuel can be changed by the driver, the road, and the vehicle speed because it is calculated according to the changing fuel efficiency.

Instantaneous Fuel Economy

This mode indicates the instantaneous fuel economy of the vehicle to the user reflecting the effect of acceleration on fuel consumption

Timer

The timer function measures the time that has passed since the last reset, using the elapsed time.

To reset the driving time to zero, press and hold the **SET/CLR** button for more than 1 second.

Outside Air Temperature

This mode indicates the outside temperature in Celsius (°C) degrees.

Vehicle Pages

Depending on vehicle equipment, some of the functions described below might not be available.

Press the **MENU** button on the turn signal lever until Vehicle Pages menu is displayed.

Use the adjusting knob to scroll through the following menu items:

- Battery Voltage.
- Coolant Temperature.
- Engine and Idle Hours.
- Tire Load (if available)
- Transmission Fluid Temperature.
- Speed Warning.
- Remaining Oil Life (if available).
- Tire Pressure (if available).

To change between menus, press the **MENU** button.

Battery Voltage

This display shows the current battery voltage.

Coolant Temperature

This display shows the current coolant temperature.

Engine and Idle Hours

The hourmeter is used to display the number of hours that the engine has been running.

Tire Load (if available)

This display shows the current tire load.

The tire loads that can be selected are the following:

Light : Light loaded vehicle.

ECO : Best Economy.

Max : Heavy loaded vehicle.

Transmission Fluid Temperature

This display shows the current transmission fluid temperature.

Speed Warning

This mode allows you to set the warning signal for the desired speed.

To set the speed warning, press the **SET/CLR** button and use the thumbwheel to select the desired speed.

Remaining Oil Life (if available)

This display shows the current percentage of oil life.

Tire Pressure (if available)

This display shows the current tire pressure.

Eco Pages

Press the **MENU** button on the turn signal lever until ECO menu is displayed.

Turn the adjusting knob to scroll through the following menu items:

- Eco Index.
- Economy Trend.
- Fuel Economy.

Eco Index

This feature provides feedback to the driver with a relative value of how fuel efficient they are driving. The percentage is determined based on current fuel consumption compared to what is expected by the calibration settings.

A leaf is shown at ECO Index Page when driving economically, for that the indicator must be in the ECO area.

Economy Trend

This page displays the average fuel consumption of the last 50 km. Each column presents the average fuel consumption of the last 5 km.

Fuel Economy

The current instantaneous fuel economy with the average and best obtained indicated by two labeled arrows. The indicator slides left and right within the bar depending the current instantaneous fuel economy. The selectable ranges are 25 km, 100 km, and 500 km.

Vehicle Personalisation

The settings can be personalised in the Driver Information Centre (DIC) and in the Vehicle settings menu in the Infotainment system.

For settings available in the Infotainment System, see *Settings* ⇨ 135, 151

Note

Depending on the vehicle variant, some of the following functions may not be available.

Settings in the DIC



1. Press **MENU** until **Vehicle Information Menu** is displayed.
2. Rotate the adjuster wheel to scroll through the following menu items:
Speed warning
Remaining oil life
Battery voltage
3. To close or to return to the previous page, press **MENU**.

Speed Warning

The speed warning allows a warning signal to be set, at a chosen speed.

To set the speed warning:

1. Press **SET/CLR**.
2. Rotate the adjuster wheel to select **On**.
3. Press **SET/CLR**.
4. Rotate the adjuster wheel to select a speed.
5. Press **SET/CLR** to confirm.

Remaining Oil Life

- Displays the estimate of the oil's remaining useful life.
- If Remaining Oil Life 99% is displayed, that means 99% of the current oil life remains.
- When the remaining oil life is low, the Change Engine Oil Soon message will appear on the display. The oil should be changed as soon as possible.

See Engine Oil Life System under *Service Information* ⇨ 263.
- The oil life display must be reset after each oil change. Be careful not to reset the oil life display at any other time. It cannot be reset accurately until the next oil change.

How to reset the Remaining Oil Life:

1. Turn the ignition on with the engine not running.
2. Press the **MENU** button on the turn signal lever and rotate the adjuster wheel to select the Remaining Oil Life display.

3. Press and hold the **SET/CLR** button on the end of the turn signal lever to reset the oil life to 100%.
4. Turn the ignition off.

Battery Voltage

- Displays the current battery voltage.

Lighting

Exterior Lighting

Exterior Lamp Controls	87
Automatic Light Control	87
Headlamp High/Low-Beam Changer	88
Flash-to-Pass	88
Headlight Range Adjustment	88
Daytime Running Lamps (DRL)	89
Hazard Warning Flashers	89
Turn and Lane-Change Signals	89
Front Fog Lamps	90
Reverse Lamps	90
Misted Light Covers	90

Interior Lighting

Instrument Panel Illumination Control	90
Courtesy Lamps	91
Reading Lamps	91

Lighting Features

Entry Lighting	92
Exit Lighting	92
Battery Power Protection	93

Exterior Lighting

Exterior Lamp Controls

Light Switch with Automatic Light Control



Turn light switch:

⏻ : With automatic light system, turn the switch to activate or deactivate the system, switch turns back to **AUTO**

AUTO : Headlights and exterior lights are switched on and off automatically depending on external lighting conditions

☞ : Sidelights, number plate lights and instrument panel lamps are illuminated

☞ : Headlights

When lights are on, the control indicator **☞** lights up.

See *Lamps On Reminder* ⇨ 75.

Automatic Light Control

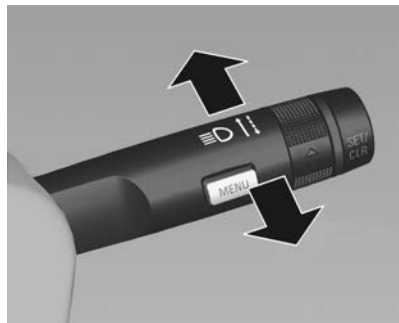


When the automatic light function **AUTO** is switched on, the system switches on the headlights and taillights automatically, depending on the exterior illumination conditions.

This function operates with a short delay in dependence of lighting conditions.

If the windscreen wipers continue to operate 8 cycles when it is dark enough outside, the exterior lamps will illuminate automatically.

Headlamp High/Low-Beam Changer



To switch from low to high beam, push the lever.

To switch to low beam, pull the lever.

Warning

Always switch the high beam headlights to low beam when you approach oncoming vehicles or other vehicles ahead. High beam headlights can temporarily dazzle other drivers, which could result in a collision.

Flash-to-Pass

To flash the high beam lights, pull the lever rearwards and release.

The lights stay on for as long as the lever is held.

Headlight Range Adjustment

Manual Headlight Range Adjustment



To set the headlight range according to vehicle load, turn the knob to the required position.

0 or 1 : One person in the driver's seat.

1 or 2 : All the seats occupied.

2 or 3 : All seats occupied and load compartment full.

Daytime Running Lamps (DRL)

DRL increase the visibility of the vehicle during daylight. The DRL LEDs can operate in two different intensities:

- Normal intensity for position light
- High intensity for DRL function

The DRL operate in high intensity in the following conditions:

- The ignition is in the ON/ RUN mode.
- The exterior lamp control is in AUTO (if available) or OFF (vehicles without AUTO light)
- The engine is running and the selector lever is not in P.

Hazard Warning Flashers



Operated with the  button.

Press again to turn the flashers off.

The hazard warning flashers will activate automatically if the airbags deploy.

Turn and Lane-Change Signals



Push the lever in the direction the steering wheel is turned.

To signal a lane change, push the lever part way in the direction of the turn. The turn signals will flash three times (six times when a trailer is connected).

To cancel a lane change function, push the lever in either direction.

A green arrow on the instrument panel flashes when the lamps are in operation.

Front Fog Lamps

The vehicle may have front fog lamps.



The front fog lamps provide extra illumination to the sides of the road and improve visibility in fog or snow.

To switch the front fog lamps on:

1. Rotate the lamp control to  or .
 2. Press .
-  illuminates on the instrument panel.

Reverse Lamps

The reverse lamps illuminate when the ignition is on and reverse gear is engaged.

R is displayed on the DIC.

Misted Light Covers

Caution

Condensation may temporarily appear on the inside of exterior lamp lenses after rain or washing the vehicle. Condensation occurs when there is a temperature difference between the inside and outside of the lamp allowing a fine mist on the inside surface of the lamp lens. This condensation will disappear when the vehicle is in a dry environment or the lamp is on. If water does collect in the lamp contact a Holden Dealer.

Interior Lighting

Instrument Panel Illumination Control



To adjust the instrument lighting brightness:

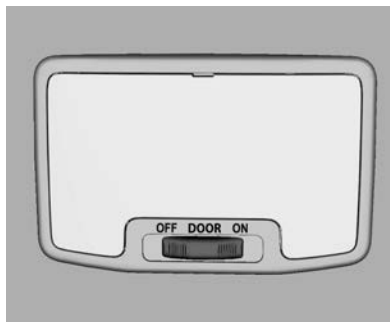
1. Rotate .
2. Hold until the required brightness is reached.

Courtesy Lamps



Press .

The light automatically switches on when a door is opened and turns off after doors are closed.



Slide the switch:

OFF : Remains off when doors are opened or closed.

DOOR : Automatically switches on when a door is opened and turns off after doors are closed.

ON : Remains on when doors are opened or closed.

Note

To prevent the battery from discharging, turn the lamp off when the engine is not running.

Warning

Do not leave the courtesy lamp on while driving in the dark.

Reading Lamps

The vehicle may have reading lamps.

The reading lamps are located between the sun visors.

Type 1

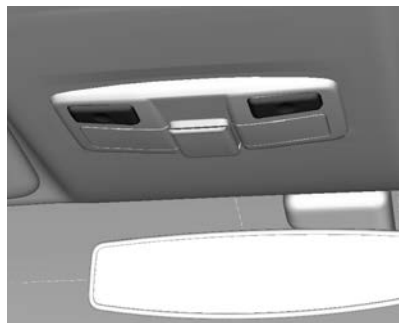


1. Press the light area to turn a lamp on.

The passenger's or driver's front lamp illuminates.

2. Press again to turn the lamp off.

Type 2



1. Press the button to turn the lamp on.

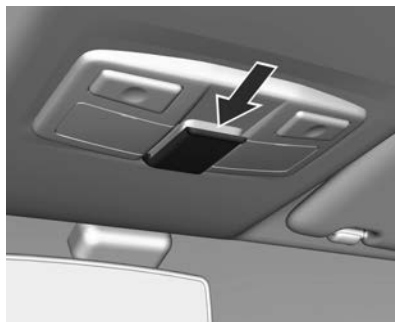
The passenger's or driver's front lamp illuminates.

2. Press again to turn the lamp off.

Note

The reading lamps do not illuminate when a door is opened.

Ticket Holder



The vehicle may have a parking ticket holder located between the reading lamps.

Pull downwards slightly to insert a ticket.

Caution

Do not force the holder trying to fit thick amounts of paper or hanging objects, as this may cause the holder to break.

Lighting Features

Entry Lighting

Entry lighting provides additional security when returning to the vehicle at night.

Press  on the key. Interior and exterior* lights illuminate for a short time.

*: with light control switch in Auto.

The lighting switches off when the ignition is turned to the ACC position.

Additionally, some interior lights and switches will illuminate when the driver's door is opened.

See *Ignition Positions* ⇨ 184.

Exit Lighting

The interior lamps will come on when the key is removed from the ignition. The lamps will not come on if the sliding button of the courtesy light is in the **OFF** position.

Headlights illuminate the way for an adjustable time after leaving the vehicle. The exit lighting in the

standard setting is activated 30 seconds after the driver's door is closed.

The activation time can be changed, refer to Settings in the Infotainment System.

To operate:

1. Switch off ignition.
2. Turn the light control switch to Auto.
3. Remove ignition key.
4. Open driver's door.
5. Close driver's door.

Battery Power Protection

Switching Off Electric Lights

To prevent discharge of the battery when the ignition is switched off, some interior lights are switched off automatically after some time.

If you turn off the ignition with the exterior lights on, they will immediately turn off. If you turn the exterior lights on when the ignition is off they will remain on.

Infotainment System

Introduction

Introduction	95
Overview	95
Steering Wheel Controls	97
Using the System	98

Radio

AM-FM Radio	99
Radio Reception	100
Radio Reception	101
Fixed Mast Antenna	102

Audio Players

USB Port	103
Auxiliary Jack	105
Bluetooth Audio	106

Navigation

Using the Navigation System	107
Maps	111
Navigation Symbols	111
Destination	113
Settings	118
Global Positioning System (GPS)	119

Vehicle Positioning	119
Problems with Route Guidance	120
If the System Needs Service	120
Map Data Updates	120
Database Coverage Explanations	121

Voice Recognition

Voice Recognition	121
-------------------------	-----

Phone

Bluetooth (Overview)	127
Bluetooth (Infotainment Controls)	128
Bluetooth (Voice Recognition)	132
Text Messaging	133
Apple CarPlay and Android Auto	134

Settings

Settings	135
----------------	-----

Trademarks and License

Agreements

Trademarks and Licence Agreements	139
---	-----

Introduction

Infotainment	147
--------------------	-----

Theft-Deterrent Feature	148
Overview	148
Home Page	149
Steering Wheel Controls (If equipped)	150
Operation	151
Settings	151

Radio

AM-FM Radio	154
Radio Reception	155
Radio Reception	155
Fixed Mast Antenna	157

Audio Players

USB Port	158
Auxiliary Devices	164

Phone

Bluetooth (Overview)	165
Bluetooth (Infotainment Controls)	165
Hands-Free Phone	170
Hands-Free Phone (Apple CarPlay and Android Auto)	172

Trademarks and License

Agreements

Trademarks and Licence Agreements	172
---	-----

Introduction

Two infotainment systems are available.

This section describes the infotainment system with built-in Navigation system. For the system without built-in Navigation, see *Infotainment* ⇨ 147.

Note

Some functions of the Infotainment System may not be compatible with all phones or smartphones available in the market. Such features also depend on the connection with the internet and the service offered by phone companies and apps availability.

Overview

Read the following pages to become familiar with the infotainment system features.

Danger

Taking your eyes off the road for too long or too often while using any infotainment feature can cause a crash. You or others could be injured or killed. Do not give extended attention to infotainment tasks while driving. Limit your glances at the vehicle displays and focus your attention on driving. Use voice commands whenever possible.

Warning

It is illegal to touch your phone when driving.

Make sure that Bluetooth® is activated before driving. If not, stop at a safe place to use a mobile phone.

The infotainment system has built-in features intended to help avoid distraction by disabling some functions when driving. These

functions may grey out when they are unavailable. Many infotainment features are also available through the steering wheel controls.

Before driving:

- Become familiar with the operation, faceplate buttons, and screen buttons.
- Set up the audio by pre-setting favourite stations, setting the tone, and adjusting the speakers.
- Set up phone numbers in advance so they can be called easily by pressing a single button or by using a single voice command if equipped with Bluetooth phone capability.

See “Defensive Driving” in the owner manual.

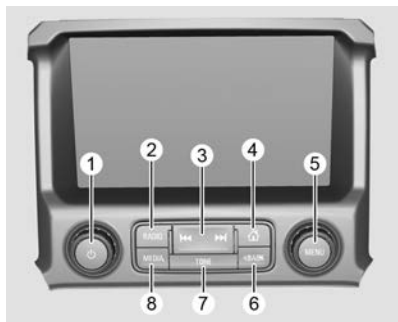
Customer Care

Assistance is available to help with Bluetooth pairing, application downloading and installation, other mobile device interface, and

operation support of the infotainment system. Contact your dealer for assistance.

Infotainment System

The infotainment system is controlled by using the touchscreen, the buttons below the touchscreen, steering wheel controls, and voice recognition.



1. ⏻ (Power/Volume)

- Press to turn the audio on.
- Press and hold to turn it off.
- Press to mute the system. Press again to unmute.

- Turn to increase or decrease the volume.
2. RADIO
 - Press to change the audio source between AM and FM.
 3. ⏮ or ⏭ (Seek)
 - AM and FM: Press ⏮ or ⏭ to seek to the previous or next station with good reception.
 - AM and FM: Press and hold ⏮ or ⏭ to go to the desired station.
 4. 🏠 (Home Page)
 - Press to go to the Home Page from any point in the system. See "Home Page".
 5. MENU
 - Press to access the menu for the current audio source.
 - Press to select the highlighted menu option.
 - Turn to scroll through a list.

- Turn to manually select a station.
6. ◀ BACK
 - Press to return to the previous screen in a menu.
 7. TONE
 - Press TONE in the AUDIO screen to open the Tone Settings menu.
 8. MEDIA
 - Press to change the audio source between USB, AUX, and Bluetooth Audio, if equipped and if connected to the system.

Power (On/Off/Mute)

- Press ⏻ to turn the system on. Press again and hold to turn it off.
- Press ⏻ to mute the system. Press again to unmute the system.

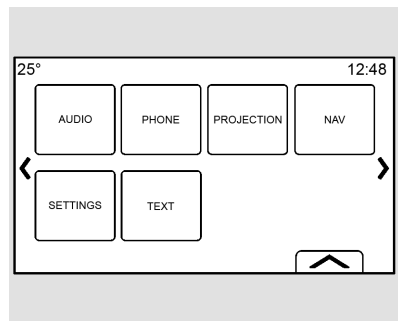
Volume

Turn  to increase or decrease the volume.

Note

When changing the audio source, a difference in volume may be experienced.

Home Page



The Home Page is where vehicle application icons are accessed. Some applications are disabled when the vehicle is moving.

The Home Page can be set up to have up to five pages with eight icons per page.

⏮ **(Previous)** : Touch to go to the previous Home Page.

⏭ **(Next)** : Touch to go to the next Home Page.

⏮ **(Interaction Selector)** : Touch to display the favorites list.

Touch and hold a location within the favorites area to begin the process of saving a favorite application.

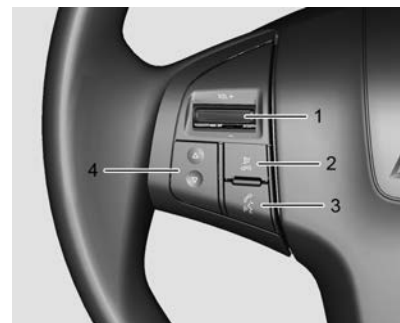
Touch the application icon to store as a favorite. The name of the application will be shown in favorites.

Managing Home Page Icons

1. Touch and hold any of the Home Page icons to enter edit mode.
2. Continue holding the icon and drag it to the desired position.
3. Release your finger to drop the icon in the desired position.
4. To move an application to another page, drag the icon to the edge of the screen towards the desired page.

5. Continue dragging and dropping application icons as desired.
6. Press  to exit edit mode.

Steering Wheel Controls



1. **Volume** button
 - Move the button upward to VOL + button to increase the volume.
 - Move the button downward to - button to decrease the volume.

2. button

- Press this button to decline an incoming call or end a current call.
- Press this button to mute or unmute the infotainment system when not on a call.

3. button

- When there is no connected Bluetooth device, the Infotainment system executes the Bluetooth device connection.
- When there is a connected Bluetooth device, press the button to answer the call or enter the redial selection mode.

If the customer's connected phone supports Speech Recognition, press and hold the button to activate the phone's SR (Speech recognition) mode.

- If an iPhone is connected, press and hold to enter the Siri function.

4. (seek)

- When   are pressed up/down.

In Radio modes, changes broadcast frequencies saved.

In USB/iPod/Bluetooth audio modes, changes the file.

- When   are pressed and held.

In USB/iPod/Bluetooth audio modes, rewind or fast forward the file.

Using the System

Touchscreen Buttons

Touchscreen buttons show on the screen when available. When a function is unavailable, the button may gray out. When a function is selected, the button may highlight.

Home Page Features

Touch the icons on the Home Page screen to launch an application.

Audio

Touch the AUDIO icon to display the active audio source page. Available sources are AM, FM, DAB, My Media, USB, Bluetooth, and AUX Input.

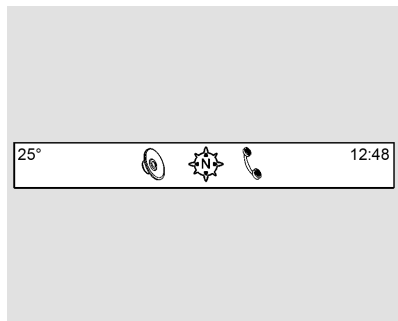
Phone

Touch the PHONE icon to display the Phone main page. See *Bluetooth (Voice Recognition)* ⇨ 132 or *Bluetooth (Overview)* ⇨ 127 or *Bluetooth (Infotainment Controls)* ⇨ 128.

Settings

Touch the SETTINGS icon to display the Settings menu. See *Settings* ⇨ 135.

Applications Tray



The applications tray is at the top-center of the screen. The applications tray can have three to five applications.

To add an application from the Home Page to the applications tray:

1. Touch and hold any icon on the Home Page to enter edit mode.

2. Drag the icon to the applications tray.

To remove an item from the applications tray, drag the icon from the applications tray back to the Home Page.

Press  to exit edit mode.

Adding or removing applications from the applications tray will not remove them from the Home Page.

Cleaning High Gloss Surfaces and Vehicle Information and Radio Displays

For vehicles with high gloss surfaces or vehicle displays, use a microfibre cloth to wipe surfaces. Before wiping the surface with the microfibre cloth, use a soft bristle brush to remove dirt that could scratch the surface. Then use the microfibre cloth by gently rubbing to clean. Never use window cleaners or solvents. Periodically hand wash the microfibre cloth separately, using mild soap. Do not use bleach or fabric softener. Rinse thoroughly and air dry before next use.

Radio

AM-FM Radio

Playing the Radio

While on the Audio main page, the available sources are: AM, FM, DAB, My Media, USB, Bluetooth, and AUX Input.

- Touch the Audio screen button on the Home Page or Radio button below the touchscreen to scroll through AM, FM or DAB.
- Touch the Media screen button on the Home Page or Media button below the touchscreen to scroll through My Media USB, Bluetooth, and AUX Input.

Infotainment System Settings

Touch the Audio screen button to access broadcast sources.

Touch the MENU screen button to display the following menus:

Tone Settings:

- Bass, Midrange, Treble : Touch + or – to adjust.

- **Balance:** Touch < or > for more sound from the left or right speakers. The middle position balances the sound between the left and right speakers.
- **Fade:** Touch ^ or v for more sound from the front or rear speakers. The middle position balances the sound between the front and rear speakers.

Finding a Station

Seeking a Station

Press ◀◀ or ▶▶ on the faceplate to search for the previous or next station with good reception.

Direct Tune

Touch the TUNE screen button to switch to Direct Tune for manually searching for a station.

If not equipped with Direct Tune, touch the SEEK screen button to switch to TUNE. Touch again to change back. Turn the MENU knob to manually search for a station.

Press ◀ BACK on the faceplate to return to the Home Page or touch < to return for the previous page.

Storing Radio Station Presets

Favorites are stored in the area at the bottom of the screen.

Up to 60 preset stations can be stored under the following:

AM or FM, Radio Stations : Touch and hold a favorite screen button to save the current station as a favorite. Touch a favorite screen button in the favorite area to recall a favorite station.

Mixed-Audio Favorites

Favorites that can be stored include radio stations, media favorites, contacts, destinations, navigation, or applications.

To scroll through the favorites:

- Drag up on the top border of the favorites bar to view the favorites. To close the favorites, drag them down.

- Slide a finger to the right or left to scroll through each page of favorites.

Tone Settings : Touch and hold a favorite screen button in the favorite area to save the current tone settings as a favorite in the tone settings screen. Drag up on the reveal button at the bottom to bring up favorites. Touch a favorite screen button in the favorite area to recall a favorite tone setting.

The number of favorites displayed is automatically adjusted by default, but can be manually adjusted in the Settings menu under Radio and then Number of Favourites Shown.

Radio Reception

Unplug electronic devices from the accessory power outlets if there is interference or static in the radio.

FM

FM signals only reach about 16 to 65 km (10 to 40 mi). Although the radio has a built-in electronic circuit that automatically works to reduce interference, some static can occur,

especially around tall buildings or hills, causing the sound to fade in and out.

AM

The range for most AM stations is greater than for FM, especially at night. The longer range can cause station frequencies to interfere with each other. Static can also occur when things like storms and power lines interfere with radio reception. When this happens, try reducing the treble on the radio.

Cell Phone Usage

Cell phone usage, such as making or receiving phone calls, charging, or just having the phone on may cause static interference in the radio. Unplug the phone or turn it off if this happens.

Radio Reception

Digital audio broadcasting

Digital audio broadcasting (DAB) is an innovative and universal broadcasting system.

Advantages of DAB

- DAB stations are indicated by the programme name instead of the broadcasting frequency
- With DAB, several radio programmes (services) can be broadcasted on a single frequency (ensemble).
- Besides high-quality digital audio services, DAB is also able to transmit programme-associated data and a multitude of other data services.
- As long as a given DAB receiver can pick up the signal sent out by a broadcasting station (even if the signal is very weak), sound reproduction is ensured.
- There is no fading (weakening of the sound that is typical of AM or FM reception). The DAB signal is reproduced at a constant volume.

If the DAB signal is too weak to be picked up by the receiver, reception is interrupted completely. This can be avoided by activating DAB to DAB

Linking and/or DAB to FM Linking in the DAB menu (see below).

- Interference caused by stations that are on nearby frequencies (a phenomenon that is typical of AM and FM reception) does not occur with DAB.
- If the DAB signal is reflected by natural obstacles or buildings, the reception quality of DAB is improved, whereas AM or FM reception is considerably impaired in such cases.
- When DAB reception is enabled, the FM tuner of the Infotainment system remains active in the background and continually searches for the best receivable FM stations.

DAB settings

To configure the DAB settings options, activate the radio function and then select the DAB waveband. Select MENU in the interaction selector bar to display the DAB menu.

DAB announcements

Besides their music programmes, a lot of DAB stations also broadcast announcements of various categories. If you activate some or all categories, the DAB service currently received is interrupted when an announcement of these categories is made.

Select DAB Announcements to display the DAB categories list. Select the desired categories. The categories selected are marked with 9.

Note

DAB announcements can only be received if the DAB waveband is activated.

DAB to DAB Linking

If this function is activated, the device switches over to the same service (programme) on another DAB ensemble (frequency, if available) when the DAB signal is too weak to be picked up by the receiver.

Set DAB to DAB Linking - On or DAB to DAB Linking - Off.

DAB to FM Linking

If this function is activated, the device switches over to a corresponding FM station of the active DAB service (if available) when the DAB signal is too weak to be picked up by the receiver.

Set DAB to FM Linking - On or DAB to FM Linking - Off.

L Band

If L Band is activated, the Infotainment system receives an additional frequency range. The frequencies for L-band comprise earth and satellite radio (1452 – 1492 MHz).

Set L Band - On or L Band - Off.

Note

Additional L-Band frequencies may not be used

Intellitext

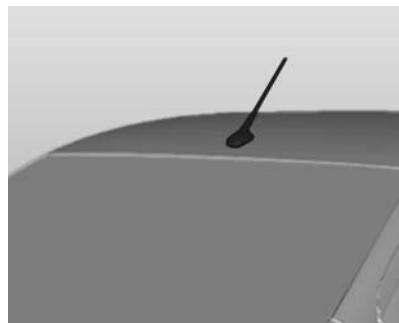
The Intellitext function allows for the reception of additional information such as announcements, financial information, sports, news etc.

Select one of the categories and choose a specific item to display detailed information.

Note

Some countries may not support this feature

Fixed Mast Antenna



To remove the roof antenna, rotate it anticlockwise. To install the roof antenna, rotate it clockwise.

Caution

To avoid damaging the antenna or the roof panel, be sure to remove the antenna before entering the automatic car wash or a place with a low ceiling.

Install the antenna firmly.

Whenever using the roof rack system, check if the antenna is not obstructing the area that is being used by the roof rack system or the cargo.

Audio Players

USB Port

The vehicle may have a USB port on the main storage under the armrest.

Playing from a USB

A USB mass storage device can be connected to the USB port.

Gracenote® (If equipped)

When plugging in a USB device, Gracenote service builds voice tags for music. Voice tags allow artists, albums with hard to pronounce names, and nicknames to be used to play music through voice recognition.

While indexing, infotainment features are available.

My Media Library

Allows access to content from all indexed media sources. Touch the MEDIA screen button to scroll through the options until My Media is selected. Use the screen buttons to scroll through the content.

USB MP3 Player and USB Drives

- The USB MP3 players and USB drives connected must comply with the USB Mass Storage Class specification (USB MSC).
- Hard disk drives are not supported.
- The following restrictions apply for the data stored on a USB MP3 player or USB device:
 - Maximum folder structure level: 11 levels.
 - Applicable audio extensions are mp3, wma, aac, m4a, and aif.
 - WMA and Apple lossless files are not supported.
 - Supported file systems are FAT32 and NTFS.

To play a USB device, do one of the following:

- Connect the USB.
- Press MEDIA until the connected device is shown.

Use the following when playing an active USB source:

► **(Play)** : Press to play the current media source.

|| **(Pause)** : Press to pause play of the current media source.

◀◀ **(Previous/Reverse)**:

- Press to return to the beginning of the current or previous track. If the track has been playing for less than two seconds, the previous track plays. If playing longer than 2–5 seconds, depending on the device, the current track restarts.
- Press and hold to reverse quickly through playback. Release to return to playing speed. Elapsed time displays.

▶▶ **(Next/Forward)**:

- Press to proceed to the next track.
- Press and hold to advance quickly through playback. Release to return to playing speed. Elapsed time displays.

USB Menu

Touch Menu to display the USB menu. The following may be available:

Shuffle: Touch to play the tracks randomly. Touch again to stop shuffle.

Tone: Touch + or – to adjust the tone settings. See *AM-FM Radio* ⇨ 99.

USB Browse Menu

Touch anywhere between the top and bottom menus or touch the BROWSE button to view the BROWSE menu. The following options are displayed along the bottom of the screen:

Playlists:

1. Touch to view the playlists stored on the USB.
2. Select a playlist to view the list of all songs in that playlist.
3. Select a song from the list to begin playback.

Artists:

1. Touch to view the list of artists stored on the USB.
2. Select an artist name to view a list of all albums by the artist.
3. To select a song, touch ► to play All Songs or touch the artist name and then select a song from the list.

Albums:

1. Touch to view the albums on the USB.
2. Select the album to view a list of all songs on the album.
3. Select a song from the list to begin playback.

Songs:

1. Touch to display a list of all songs on the USB.
2. To begin playback, select a song from the list.

Genres:

1. Touch to view the genres on the USB.

2. Select a genre to view a list of all content of that genre.
3. Select artist to view a list of albums. Select an album to view a list of songs.
4. Select a song to start playback.

Podcasts, Composers, Audiobooks, Videos, and Folder View are shown when More is selected from the bottom of the screen.

Podcasts:

1. Touch to view the podcasts on the USB.
2. Select a podcast.
3. Select an episode to start playback.

Composers:

1. Touch to view the composers on the USB.
2. Select Composers to view a list of albums by that composer.
3. Select an album to view a list of songs.
4. Select a song from the list to begin playback.

Audiobooks:

1. Touch to view the audiobooks stored on the device.
2. Select the audiobook from the list. Select a chapter to begin playback.

Folder View (If Equipped):

1. Touch to view the directories on the USB.
2. Select a folder to view a list of all files.
3. Select a file from the list to begin playback.

File System and Naming

The songs, artists, albums, and genres are taken from the file's song information and are only displayed if present. The radio displays the file name as the track name if the song information is not available.

Loss of Audio

If a phone currently paired over Bluetooth is plugged in with a USB cable, the system will automatically mute the Bluetooth audio. Playback

can be resumed by changing the audio source from Bluetooth to USB cable.

Source USB from the Audio MEDIA screen button to resume playback.

Auxiliary Jack

An auxiliary input jack is provided in the center console under the armrest. Possible auxiliary audio sources include:

- Laptop computer
- Audio music player

This jack is not an audio output. Do not plug headphones into the auxiliary input jack. Set up an auxiliary device while the vehicle is in P (Park).

Connect a 3.5 mm (1/8 in) cable from the auxiliary device to the auxiliary input jack. When a device is connected, the system can play audio from the device over the vehicle speakers.

If an auxiliary device has already been connected, but a different source is currently active, touch the MEDIA screen button to scroll through audio source screens, until AUX Input source screen displays.

Playing from the AUX Port

An auxiliary device is played through the audio system and controlled through the device itself.

AUX Menu

Touch the MEDIA screen button to display the AUX Input menu and then the following options may display:

Tone Settings : Select to adjust Bass, Midrange, Treble, Balance, Fade, and EQ (Equalizer). See *AM-FM Radio* ⇨ 99.

Auto Volume : (If Equipped): This feature adjusts the volume based on the vehicle speed. See *AM-FM Radio* ⇨ 99.

Bluetooth Audio

If equipped, music may be played from a paired Bluetooth device. See *Bluetooth (Voice Recognition)* ⇨ 132 or *Bluetooth (Overview)* ⇨ 127 or *Bluetooth (Infotainment Controls)* ⇨ 128 for help pairing a device.

The music can be controlled by either the infotainment controls or the controls on the device.

Music can be launched by pressing the MEDIA faceplate button or touching the MEDIA screen button on the AUDIO Home Page.

To play music via Bluetooth:

1. Power on the device, and pair to connect the device.
2. Once paired, go into the audio application from the Home Page or through the applications tray. Select MEDIA until Bluetooth displays.

Bluetooth Audio Menu

Touch the MENU screen button to display the Bluetooth Audio menu. The following may be available:

Tone: Touch + or – to adjust the tone settings. See *AM-FM Radio* ⇨ 99.

Touch ⬅ to go back to the previous menu.

Manage Bluetooth Devices: Touch to go to the Bluetooth page to add or delete devices.

When using the Bluetooth audio source, the radio may not be able to launch specific applications on your device. Use the device to start audio playback when it is safe to do so.

All devices launch audio differently. When selecting Bluetooth audio as a source, the radio may show as paused on the screen. Press play on the device or press ▶ to begin playback.

Navigation

Using the Navigation System

Touch the NAV button on the Home Page or the Nav icon in the applications tray to access the navigation application.

Touch MENU from the map view or MENU button on the faceplate to access the Navigation Menu. Features displayed in the Navigation Menu can be selected to adjust navigation preferences.

It is advised to set up preferences before setting a destination. To set a destination, see *Destination* ⇨ 113.

The buttons on the infotainment screen display will time out when not interacting. Tap anywhere on the screen to reveal the controls, then select the desired control.

Additional navigation features are:

- Cancel/Resume Route
- Navigation Voice Preferences
- Current Location

- Map View
- Routing Preferences
- Display “Places of Interest” Icons
- Personal Data

Cancel/Resume Route

- While under route guidance, this screen button displays Cancel Route. Touch Cancel Route to cancel route guidance. No further prompts will be given. The list item then changes to Resume To.
- Touch the Resume To screen button to resume route guidance to the last entered destination. The last location that the system has provided guidance to can be resumed by touching on this list item.
- If the route includes waypoints, the entire route can be suspended using the Cancel Guidance list item. When Resume Guidance is touched, all waypoints are resumed for guidance.

Navigation Voice Preferences

Touch the Navigation Voice Preferences list item to adjust the voice preferences.

The following options can be adjusted:

- Voice Prompts ON-OFF
- Voice Volume
- Prompts During Phone Calls ON-OFF

Voice Prompts

Touch the Voice Prompts list item to toggle voice prompts ON and OFF.

Voice Volume

Adjust the loudness of the audio feedback by touching the – or + button. If a maneuver prompt is being played, and the main volume is adjusted, the prompt volume will update and be saved.

Prompts During Phone Calls

When enabled, the system plays a shorter prompt while on a phone call. This setting can be configured as to whether a prompt would be heard during a phone conversation.

When this setting is OFF, only the short alert tone is played when approaching the maneuver.

Current Location

Touch the Current Location list item to display a Current Location list.

The following information is displayed on the Current Location list:

- Nearest Address
- Lat/Long
- Nearest Hospital
- Nearest Police
- Nearest Fuel
- Nearest Service

Touch on any of the options to display the destination details view for the selected location to begin guidance.

Touch the Nearest Address button and then the Save screen button to store the current location to the Address Book.

Display Places of Interest Icons

Places of Interest (POI) icons can be displayed on the map using this view.

- The POI icons can be turned ON and OFF. Touch the check box next to the POI icon to display the icon.
- Touch Clear All to reset the icons that are displayed on the map.
- A subcategory can be selected instead of the entire category. Touch the list item rather than the check box. The subcategories will display. Select any of those categories to navigate down the hierarchy.
- When a higher-level category has some of its subcategories selected, the checkmark next to it is grayed out. This indicates that only some of the categories below are shown. Touch the grayed-out checkmark to turn all of the icons for that category on or off.

Map View

Touch to select the desired map view. A checkmark appears to indicate a view has been selected.

3D View

The 3D View is a Heading Up view but it includes perspective. Map items will appear larger as the vehicle comes closer.

Heading Up View

The Heading Up View keeps the vehicle's current heading at the top of the view. The vehicle icon always faces the top of the view as the map rotates.

North Up View

The North Up View keeps north at the top of the view. The vehicle icon is placed in the center of the view and rotates to indicate the heading for the vehicle.

Audio Information On/Off

Touch to turn the audio information view on or off from the main map view.

The audio status screen contains the following elements:

- Station Frequency
- Artist Information
- Song Information
- ► / || or ◀◀ / ▶▶ Station and Channel Controls

Touch the ◀◀ / ▶▶ Station controls to go to the next or previous strong signal station or digital channel.

When the audio status pane displays Artist and Song Information, touch the ◀◀ / ▶▶ controls to go to the next or previous track based on the current media mode.

Day/Night Mode

Touch to access the Day/Night Mode menu.

The options are:

- Day Mode: Brightens the map background.
- Night Mode: Darkens the map background.

- Automatic: Adjusts the screen background automatically depending on the exterior lighting conditions.

Routing Preferences

Touch the Routing Preferences list item to access the Routing Preferences menu. Options on how the routes are created for route guidance are listed on this menu.

Route Style

Touch this list item to change the route type preferences.

The options are:

- Fast (default)
- Eco Friendly (if equipped)
- Short
- Edit Eco Profile

The Edit Eco Profile can be used to configure two parameters for the Eco Friendly route. These parameters are roof load and trailer. For each parameter, the options are None, Small, Medium, and Large. Press to scroll through the list. The default for both is None.

These preferences are used for all routes generated.

Route segment preferences are other options showing on the Routing Preferences menu.

This includes:

- Use Toll Roads ON-OFF
- Use Freeways ON-OFF
- Use Carpool Lanes ON-OFF
- Use Ferries ON-OFF
- Use Tunnels ON-OFF
- Use Time Restricted Roads ON-OFF

Personal Data

Data that the system has saved during the course of using the navigation system can be managed through:

- Contacts
- Recent Destinations
- My POIs (if equipped)
- Upload Saved Locations
- Delete Autocomplete

Contacts

1. Touch Edit Contacts to display the Contacts to edit.
2. Touch Delete All Entries to delete the entire list of contacts or touch Edit Contacts List to delete one or more items. A pop-up displays to confirm.

Recent Destinations

- Touch Delete Individual Destinations to display a recent destinations list. Select the individual entry to delete.
- Touch Delete All Destinations to delete the entire recent destination list. A pop-up displays asking to confirm the deletion.

My POIs

- Touch My POIs to display a menu of other options.
- Select Delete Individual Categories. A My POIs category list displays.
- Select the individual entry to delete.

- Touch Delete All My POIs to delete the entire list of categories. A pop-up displays asking to confirm the deletion.
- To exit out of a list, touch the Exit screen button in the top right corner of the map to return to the main map view.

Upload Saved Locations: Touch to upload any saved locations such as downloaded POIs and all entries in the vehicle address book to the USB device.

- Touch Upload Saved Locations to save the Vehicle Contacts list and any My POIs that have been saved to the vehicle.
- Once saved locations have been uploaded to a USB, they can be transferred to a different vehicle or restored to the current address book.

Delete Autocomplete

- Touch Delete Autocomplete to delete all keyboard autocomplete history. A pop-up displays asking to confirm the deletion.

Map Adjustments

ZOOM +/- can be used to adjust the scale of view on the map. When the end of the zoom level is reached, ZOOM +/- will gray out.

The zoom scales can be configured for English or metric units. To change from English to metric, see "Instrument Cluster" in the owner manual.

Scroll Features

- To scroll within the map, touch anywhere on the map screen.
- Nudge or slide a finger on the map; the map moves in the direction of the finger.
- Fling a finger on the map; the map will start scrolling in a short continuous scroll.
- Touch a finger on the location on the map; the map recenters to the location that was touched on.

- Touch a finger twice on a location on the map; the map zooms in one level to the location that was touched twice on.
- When the map is recentered away from being locked to the vehicle position, the crosshairs will show in the center of the map. As the map continues to be recentered, the crosshairs will remain on the screen. When the crosshairs are shown on the screen, a callout with more information displays. If the map is moved from the current location, the crosshairs will disappear along with the callout.
- Touch a finger on the callout next to the crosshairs and the destination details view displays. From this view, route guidance can be received or saved to the vehicle's contact list.
- When the map is recentered, the straight-line distance from the vehicle to the selected point is displayed in the callout. In addition, a heading direction in

the form of an arrow is displayed to indicate the direction. The arrow is shown in relation to the current vehicle heading.

- Touch a finger on a POI icon shown on the map; the name of the POI is shown in the address callout, along with the city name and state. If the callout is selected, the destination details view for the POI is shown.
- After panning the map away from the vehicle, touch RESET to return the map back to the current position.
- Touch the Overview button to quickly get a view of the entire route. The route Overview button takes the place of the RESET button while under route guidance. Touch the RESET button to return the map to the current position.

Maps

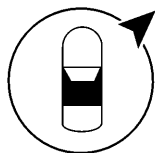
The map database is stored in the internal flash memory that is used in the navigation system.

Detailed Areas

Road network attributes are contained in the map database for detailed areas. Attributes include information such as street names, street addresses, and turn restrictions. A detailed area includes all major highways, service roads, and residential roads. The detailed areas include Places of Interest (POIs) such as restaurants, airports, banks, hospitals, police stations, gas stations, tourist attractions, and historical monuments. The map database may not include data for newly constructed areas or map database corrections that are completed after production. The navigation system provides full route guidance in the detailed map areas.

Navigation Symbols

Following are the most common symbols that appear on a map screen.



or



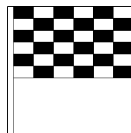
The vehicle symbol indicates the current position and heading direction of the vehicle on the map. When under route guidance, a circle with an arrow is added to the vehicle symbol which indicates the direction to the destination.

Vehicle Address Callout

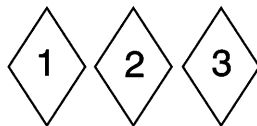
Tap on the vehicle icon, to have the current address of the vehicle overlaid on the map next to the vehicle icon in a callout. Another tap hides the information.

Any address information about the vehicle's current location will be shown, including the street, city, and state names.

Tap on this callout to save the current address to the vehicle address book.

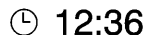


The destination symbol marks the final destination after a route has been planned.



The waypoint symbol marks one or more set waypoints.

A waypoint is a stopover destination point added to the planned route.



The estimated time to the destination displays. Touch the Arrival button to toggle to duration and to the distance of the destination.



This symbol indicates the recommended maneuver that should be performed. Touch it to display the turn list or waypoint list.



The No GPS symbol appears when there is no Global Positioning System (GPS) satellite signal. When the GPS is gone, the vehicle position on the map may not be accurate.

Autozoom

As a maneuver is being approached, the map automatically zooms in to give greater detail.

If lane guidance is available for the maneuver, this is also shown.

When the system begins to autozoom, it zooms in to its minimum level. After the maneuver is performed, the system slowly zooms back out.

Destination

If route guidance is not active, touch the NAV screen button on the Home Page to access the map view.

Touch the Destination icon from the map view to enter a destination. Available methods of entering a destination are Address, Recent Destinations, Contacts, Intersection and POIs. Several options can be

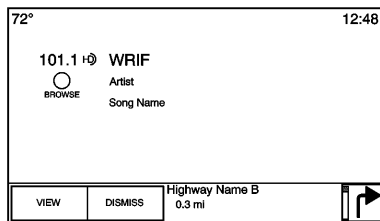
selected to plan a route. Some destination items may be grayed out if no destination was previously entered or saved.

Touch the DESTINATION button to go to the destination entry views.

Available Methods of Search

- Address
- Intersection
- POIs
- Recent Destinations
- Contacts

Navigation Next Turn Maneuver Alert



The navigation system has an alert feature. The navigation system may need to get the attention of the driver.

If not in the navigation application when a near maneuver prompt is given, it is shown as an alert. The alert contains the turn indicator and button to display the main navigation view, or dismiss the alert.

The alert also contains the name of the street to turn on and a countdown bar.

Alpha-Numeric Keyboard

The keyboard is used in multiple locations throughout the system and can be used with many features.

The navigation system uses the keyboard's alpha-numeric keyboard.

The keyboard can also be modified to include characters appropriate for the region configured in the vehicle settings.

✓ **GO** : Touch to search for the destination details of an address or place of interest entered in the text field. Once the GO screen button is

pressed, the activity indicator displays in the list of possible matches.

 (**Dropdown Arrow**) : Touch to display a list of matches.

When there are multiple matches, a dropdown arrow is shown after the autocomplete text. This dropdown displays an entire list of matches. Touch the appropriate match without having to enter more text.

X (Delete) : Touch to delete the last typed character. Press and hold this screen button to clear the entire text field. If the entire text field has been deleted, this screen button becomes an Undo button. Touching Undo will restore the deleted text.

Exit : Touch to return to the previous Map view.

Sym : Touch to show the symbol keyboard.

Space : Touch to enter a space between characters or the words of a name.

 (**Up Arrow**) : Touch to display the Interaction Selector.

Special Characters

As the characters are typed on the keyboard, a pop-up of the letter touched displays above the key that was touched.

Continue to touch and hold, and any additional special characters associated with that letter are displayed around the current letter. To select one of the special characters, slide a finger left or right to select the special character.

Special Character List

The following characters have special characters beneath them:

E - É Ê Ë Ì Í Î Ï	More Characters:
Y - Ÿ	0 - °
U - Û Ü Û Ü	! - ¡
I - Ì Í Î Ï	\$ - ¥ £ ¢
O - Õ Ø Æ Ö Ö Ö	& - §
A - Å Ä Å Æ Å Å Å	" - « »
S - Š (for lowercase s) Š š	? - ¿
L - Ł	{ - [{
Z - Ž Ž Ž	) -] }
C - Č Ć Ć	.com - .net .org
N - Ñ Ñ	
- - ...	

Saved Destinations

Select a saved destination from the Contacts or Recent Destinations.

Contacts

Select the CONTACTS button to view the vehicle's contact list or a connected Bluetooth device. If a particular contact has a single address associated with it, that contact has a Quick Route list item function button next to it. Contacts without this Quick Route button either have multiple addresses or no address at all. Touch the Quick Route button to go to the Destination Details view.

Touch on an address, either from the Quick Route on the contact list or a specific address from the contact detail list, to go to the destination view showing that address on the map.

Trips from Contacts can be saved and recalled. The order is based on when the trip was last used. When the trips are saved, they are given a default title of the final destination name. If there are no saved trips, this list item is hidden.

Favorite Destinations

- Destinations can be saved as Favorites for recall later. Depending on the favorite, when an address or POI favorite is recalled, the Destination Details View is shown.
- When a favorite address is being routed to, it is shown active. Touch on the active favorite to suspend that route.
- Save locations as Favorites for recall later in the Destination Details View.
- Save trips from the Address Book.

Storing Favorites from the Contact Details List

A contact name or any of the contact's information such as phone number, e-mail address, or address from Contact Details can be stored as a Favorite.

- Touch and drag up on the row of Interaction Selector buttons to reveal the Favorite buttons.

- Touch and hold on the favorite location while viewing a contact on the Contact Details List. The contact name and all contact information can be stored.
- Touch to save as a favorite. The favorite label will be the name of the contact.
- Touch on the Favorite to display the destination view.

Storing Favorites from Map

Favorite locations can be stored from the Map View.

If not under route guidance, the current vehicle location will be saved as a Favorite. If under route guidance, the final destination will be saved.

Touch and drag up on the row of Interaction Selector buttons to reveal the Favorite buttons. Touch and hold on the favorite location from the Map View to save it.

Route Guidance

- Touch GO to go to the main navigation view and to start route guidance.

- If the system has an active route, a pop-up will display, "What would you like to do with this destination?" The options are: Add As Waypoint, Set New Destination, or Cancel.
- If a waypoint is added, it is placed in the location that leads to the most efficient route.
- There is a maximum number of waypoints that can be added to the system. When the maximum number of waypoints has been reached, a pop-up displays indicating that a waypoint must first be deleted before a new one can be added. The system will hold this waypoint into a Pending Waypoints list and will automatically be added to the route once a position is available, either by arriving at a waypoint, or by deleting one.
- To save a location, tap on the ▲ to display the Favorite buttons. Touch and hold on a favorite location to save the shown location as a Favorite.

Estimated Time of Arrival (ETA) and Distance

- When under route guidance, the system shows the ETA or travel time, or the driving distance.
- The ETA and travel time are calculated using any available traffic information.
- If in a waypoint trip, the ETA, travel time, and driving distance are all shown relative to the final destination.
- The final ETA is shown taking into consideration any time zone crossings that the route has traveled through.
- Touch the ETA information area to switch between the estimated arrival time, total driving time resulting, and driving distance.

Turn List

Touch on the next turn indicator shown on the map to display the turn list or waypoint list. The Interaction Selector is minimized automatically. Touch ▲ to reveal the following options:

Destination

Touch the DESTINATION screen button to add a waypoint or change the destination while viewing the turn list. When the DESTINATION screen button is touched, the display shows the Destination screens.

End Guidance

Touch the End screen button to suspend the current route in the turn list. When the End screen button is touched, the turn list is exited, and the display returns to the main map view.

Avoid Areas

Touch the Avoid Areas screen button to select the highway name that is to be avoided. The system shows a pop-up asking how many miles or if the entire road should be avoided.

Turn List

- When under a waypoint trip, touch on the TURN LIST Interaction Selector button to

show the turn list. When entering a turn list, the next maneuver instruction is spoken.

- The turn list title is the name or address of the destination. Touch on the information button next to the name of the destination to display the destination information.
- The turn list is sorted in order with the next maneuver at the top of the list and the subsequent maneuvers listed below it. The next maneuver is always highlighted upon entry into the Turn List to quickly show what the next maneuver is.
- Each maneuver indicates the distance between it and the previous maneuver or the vehicle's current location. The next maneuver at the top will count down until the maneuver is reached, and then the next maneuver will begin to count down.
- Each maneuver has an estimated time of arrival based on the current driving conditions.

Saved Trips

Waypoint trips can be saved for later recall. Touch the + add button in the waypoints list to save the trip to the Saved Trips list in the vehicle's contacts list. When trips are saved, they are given a default title of the final destination. Saved trips can be edited by selecting the Edit list item button to access the edit screen for the saved entry. The only field that can be edited is the name field. Touch on the name field to access the keyboard view. Type the name change. This change is automatically saved when executed by the keyboard.

The saved trip can also be deleted from the edit mode. Touch the delete button and a delete confirmation pop-up will display.

Waypoints

- When under a waypoint trip, touch on the next turn indicator to bring up the waypoint list. The last waypoint view is shown, which could be Waypoints, Turn List, or Edit.

- The waypoint list is sorted in order with the next waypoint at the top of the list. Each waypoint is indicated with a numbered icon, starting with the next waypoint.
- To indicate what segment of the route is for the next waypoint, and what is for the remainder of the route, they appear in different colors.

Optimized Route

- Touch the OPTIMIZE screen button to optimize the current waypoint trip.
- The optimization is done according to how the preferences are set for new routes, e.g., fastest route, shortest distance, or eco friendly.
- While the system is optimizing the route, the waypoint trip has the Activity Indicator displayed over top of it. If the system is calculating the ETA and travel distance for a waypoint, the Activity Indicator is displayed in the list header.

- When either a waypoint trip is first created, or additional waypoints are added to an existing waypoint trip, they are added in the location that would lead to an optimized route.
- If a destination is already planned and a waypoint is added, it is either added before or after the current destination, whichever leads to the most optimal route.
- If under an existing waypoint trip consisting of two or more destinations, any additional waypoints are added in the location that would lead to the most optimal route.

Edit Route

- Touch the EDIT screen button to modify the order or remove a waypoint from the route. Press the delete screen button to remove a waypoint from the route.
- A pop-up displays asking for confirmation of the waypoint deletion.

Settings

Touch Settings on the Home Page to adjust features and preferences, such as Time and Date, Language, Valet Mode, or Radio. For setting options, see *Settings* ⇨ 135.

A few of the setting options change the way the navigation system displays or reacts while in use.

1. Touch the Settings screen button on the Home Page.
2. Touch the scroll bar until the desired option displays. Select the desired settings to change.

Voice

Voice recognition allows for hands-free operation within the navigation, audio and phone applications. See *Voice Recognition* ⇨ 121.

Touch the voice screen button to display the Voice menu.

Confidence Threshold : Touch to change the confidence threshold to Confirm More or Confirm Less.

Prompt Length : Touch to change the prompt length to Short or Long.

Audio Feedback Speed : Touch to change the audio feedback speed to Slow, Medium, or Fast.

Display “What can I say?” Tips : Touch to change the display tips to ON or OFF.

Display

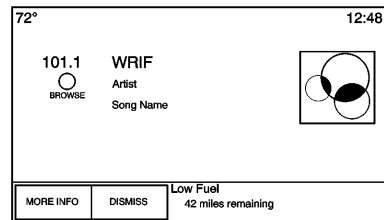
Mode : Touch Mode to change the screen background. This setting controls map colors.

- The Auto setting adjusts the screen background automatically depending on the exterior lighting conditions.
- The Day setting brightens the map background.
- The Night setting darkens the map background.

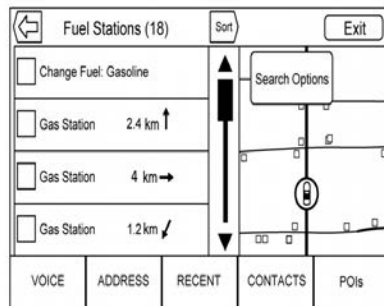
Calibrate Touchscreen : Touch to display the Touchscreen Calibration Screen.

Turn Display Off : Touch to turn the Display option off.

Low Fuel Alert



If the vehicle reaches a low fuel level, the system displays an alert about the low fuel condition. Touch the MORE INFO screen button to view nearby gas stations, and start guidance if desired.



If the remaining driving distance is available from the system, this is included in the alert.

Global Positioning System (GPS)

The position of the vehicle is determined by using satellite signals, various vehicle signals, and map data.

At times, other interference such as the satellite condition, road configuration, condition of the vehicle, and/or other circumstances can affect the navigation system's ability to determine the accurate position of the vehicle.

The GPS shows the current position of the vehicle using signals sent by GPS satellites. When the vehicle is not receiving signals from the satellites, a symbol appears on the map screen. See *Navigation Symbols* ⇨ 111.

This system might not be available or interference can occur if any of the following are true:

- Signals are obstructed by tall buildings, trees, large trucks, or a tunnel.
- Satellites are being repaired or improved.

For more information if the GPS is not functioning properly, see *Problems with Route Guidance* ⇨ 120 and *If the System Needs Service* ⇨ 120.

Vehicle Positioning

At times, the position of the vehicle on the map could be inaccurate due to one or more of the following reasons:

- The road system has changed.
- The vehicle is driving on slippery road surfaces such as sand, gravel, or snow.
- The vehicle is travelling on winding roads or long straight roads.

- The vehicle is approaching a tall building or a large vehicle.
- The surface streets run parallel to a freeway.
- The vehicle has been transferred by a vehicle carrier or a ferry.
- The current position calibration is set incorrectly.
- The vehicle is travelling at high speed.
- The vehicle changes directions more than once, or the vehicle is turning on a turn table in a parking lot.
- The vehicle is entering and/or exiting a parking lot, garage, or a lot with a roof.
- The GPS signal is not received.
- A roof carrier is installed on the vehicle.
- Tyre chains have been installed.
- The tyres are replaced or worn.
- The tyre pressure for the tyres is incorrect.

- This is the first navigation use after the map data is updated.
- The 12-volt battery is disconnected for several days.
- The vehicle is driving in heavy traffic where driving is at low speeds, and the vehicle is stopped and started repeatedly.

Problems with Route Guidance

Inappropriate route guidance can occur under one or more of the following conditions:

- The turn was not made on the road indicated.
- Route guidance might not be available when using automatic rerouting for the next right or left turn.
- The route might not be changed when using automatic rerouting.

- There is no route guidance when turning at an intersection.
- Plural names of places might be announced occasionally.
- It could take a long time to operate automatic rerouting during high-speed driving.
- Automatic rerouting might display a route returning to the set waypoint if heading for a destination without passing through a set waypoint.
- The route prohibits the entry of a vehicle due to a regulation by time or season or any other regulation which may be given.
- Some routes might not be searched.
- The route to the destination might not be shown if there are new roads, if roads have recently changed, or if certain roads are not listed in the map data. See *Maps* ⇨ 111.

To recalibrate the vehicle's position on the map, park with the vehicle running for two to five minutes, until the vehicle position updates. Make sure the vehicle is parked in a location that is safe and has a clear view of the sky and away from large obstructions.

If the System Needs Service

If the navigation system needs service and the steps listed here have been followed but there are still problems, see *Problems with Route Guidance* ⇨ 120.

Map Data Updates

The map data in the vehicle is the most up-to-date information available when the vehicle was produced. The map data can be updated, provided that the map information has changed.

For questions about the operation of the navigation system or the update process, contact your dealership.

Database Coverage Explanations

Coverage areas vary with respect to the level of map detail available for any given area. Some areas feature greater levels of detail than others. If this happens, it does not mean there is a problem with the system. As the map data is updated, more detail can become available for areas that previously had limited detail. See *Map Data Updates* ⇨ 120.

Voice Recognition

Voice recognition allows for hands-free operation within the navigation, audio and phone applications. This feature can be started by pressing either the  button on the steering wheel or touching  on the touchscreen display.

However, not all features within these areas are supported by voice commands. Generally, only complex tasks that require multiple manual interactions to complete are supported by voice commands.

For example, tasks that take more than one or two button presses such as selecting a song or artist to play from a media device would be supported by voice commands. Other tasks, like adjusting the volume or seeking up or down are audio features that are easily performed by pressing one or two buttons, and are not supported by voice commands.

Voice recognition can be used just when the ignition is on.

Using Voice Recognition

Voice recognition becomes available once the system has been initialized. This begins when the ignition is turned on. Initialization may take a few moments.

1. Press  on the steering wheel control to activate voice recognition, or touch  on the infotainment touchscreen on the center stack.
2. The audio system mutes and the system plays a prompt followed by a beep.
3. Wait until after the beep completes, then clearly speak one of the commands described in this section.

Press  to interrupt any voice recognition system prompt. For example, if the prompt seems to be taking too long to finish, press  again and the beep should happen right away.

There are two voice prompt modes supported:

- Long verbal prompts: The longer prompts provide more information regarding the supported actions.
- Short prompts: The short prompts provide simple instructions about what can be stated.

If a command is not spoken, the voice recognition system says a help prompt.

Prompts and Screen Displays

While a voice recognition session is active, there will be corresponding buttons on screens displayed. Manual interaction in the voice recognition session is permitted. Interaction during a voice session may be completed entirely using voice commands, or some selections may expedite a session. If a selection is made using a manual control, the dialog will progress in the same way as if the selection was made through a voice command. Once the system is able

to complete the task, or the session is terminated, the voice recognition dialog stops.

An example of this type of manual intervention is touching on an entry of a displayed number list instead of speaking the number associated with the entry desired.

Cancelling Voice Recognition

- Touch the Home screen button. Pressing this button will terminate a voice recognition session which was initiated by pressing the button on the radio touchscreen.
- Touch or say “Cancel” or “Exit” to terminate the voice recognition session and display the screen from which voice recognition was initiated.
- Press  on the steering wheel controls to terminate the voice session and display the screen from which voice recognition was initiated.

Helpful Hints for Speaking Commands

Voice recognition can understand commands that are either naturally stated in sentence form, or direct commands that state the application and the task.

Most languages do not support natural language commands in sentence form. For those languages, use direct commands like the examples shown on the display.

For best results:

- Listen for the prompt and wait for the beep before saying a command or reply.
- Say “Help” or look at the screen display for example commands.
- A voice recognition system prompt can be interrupted while it is playing by pressing .

For example, if the prompt seems to be taking too long to finish, to speak the command without waiting for the prompt to complete, press .

- Speak the command naturally, not too fast, not too slow. Use direct commands without a lot of extra words.
- Usually Phone and Audio commands can be spoken in a single command.

For example say, "Call Dave Smith at work," "Play" followed by the artist or song name, or "Tune" followed by the radio station number.

- Navigation destinations are too complex for a single command. First, say a command that explains the type of destination needed, such as I want directions to an "Address," "Navigate to an intersection," "I need to find a Place of Interest or POI," or "Directions to a Contact." The system responds by requesting more details. After saying "Place of Interest," only major chains are available by name. Chains are businesses with at least 20 locations. For

other POIs, say the name of a category like "Restaurants," "Shopping Malls," or "Hospitals."

There is no need to memorize specific command words. Direct commands might be more clearly understood by the system. An example of a direct command would be "Call 555-1212." Examples of these direct commands are displayed on most of the screens while a voice session is active. If "Phone" or "Phone Commands," is stated, the system understands that a phone call is requested and will respond with questions until enough details are gathered.

If the phone number has been saved with a name and a place, the direct command should include both, for example "Call Dave Smith at work."

Using Voice Recognition for List Options

When a list is displayed, a voice prompt will ask to confirm or select an option from that list. A selection

can be made by manually selecting the item, or by speaking the line number for the item to select.

When a screen contains a list, there may be options that are available but not displayed. The list on a voice recognition screen functions the same as a list on other screens. Scrolling or flinging can be used to help display other entries from the list.

Manually scrolling or paging the list on a screen during a voice recognition session suspends the current voice recognition event and plays the prompt "Make your selection from the list using the manual controls or press the Back button to try again."

If manual selection takes more than 15 seconds, the session terminates and prompts that it has timed out. The screen returns back to the screen where voice recognition was initiated.

The Back Command

Say "Back" or press the BACK button to go to the previous screen.

If in voice recognition, and “Back” is stated all the way through to the initial screen, then “Back” is stated one more time, the voice recognition session will cancel.

Help

Say “Help” on any voice recognition screen and the help prompt for the screen is played. Additionally, a pop-up displays a text version of the help prompt. Depending on how voice recognition was initiated, the Help pop-up will either display on the instrument cluster or the infotainment touchscreen. Touch the Dismiss button to make the pop-up go away.

Pressing  while the help prompt is playing will terminate the prompt and a beep will be heard. Doing this will stop the help prompt so that a voice command can be used.

Voice Recognition for the Radio

Some audio screens have a voice recognition button () to launch audio voice recognition. If the voice

button is touched in a radio screen, the voice commands for radio and media features are available.

“Switch to AM” : Switch bands to AM and tune to the last AM radio station.

“Switch to FM” : Switch bands to FM and tune to the last FM radio station.

“Tune to <AM frequency> AM” : Tune to the radio station whose frequency is identified in the command (like “nine fifty”).

“Tune to <FM frequency> FM” : Tune to the radio station whose frequency is identified in the command (like “one o one point one”).

Voice Recognition for Audio My Media

If browsing My Media when the voice button is selected, the voice recognition commands for My Media features are available.

“Play Artist” : Begin a dialog to enter a specific artist name.

“Play Artist <artist name>” : Begin playback of the media selection identified in the command.

“Play Album” : Begin a dialog to enter a specific album name.

“Play Album <album name>” : Begin playback of the identified album name in the command.

“Play Song” : Begin a dialog to enter a specific song name.

“Play Song <song name>” : Begin playback of the identified song name in the command.

“Play Genre” : Begin a dialog to enter a specific genre.

“Play Genre <genre name>” : Begin playback of the media selection identified in the command.

“Play Playlist” : Begin a dialog to enter a specific playlist name.

“Play Playlist <playlist name>” : Begin playback of the identified playlist in the command.

“Play <device name>” : Play music from a specific device identified by name. The device name is the name displayed on the screen when the device is first selected as an audio sourced.

“Play Chapter” : Begin a dialog to enter a specific name.

“Play Chapter <chapter name>” : Begin playback of the media selection identified in the command.

“Play Audiobook” : Begin a dialog to enter a specific name.

“Play Audiobook <audiobook name>” : Begin playback of the media selection identified in the command.

“Play Episode” : Begin a dialog to enter a specific name.

“Play Episode <episode name>” : Begin playback of the media selection identified in the command.

“Play Podcast” : Begin a dialog to enter a specific name.

“Play Podcast <podcast name>” : Begin playback of the media selection identified in the command.

“My Media” : Begin a dialog to enter the desired media content.

Handling Large Amounts of Media Content

It is expected that large amounts of media content will be brought into the vehicle. It may be necessary to handle large amounts of media content in a different way than smaller amounts of media. The system may limit the options of voice recognition by not allowing selection of song titles by voice at the highest level if the number of songs exceeds the maximum limit.

Voice command option changes through media content limits are:

- Song files including other individual files of all media types such as audiobook chapters and podcast episodes.
- Album type folders including types such as albums and audiobooks.

There are no restrictions if the number of song files and albums is less than 4,000. When the number of song files connected to the system is between 4,000 and 8,000, the content cannot be accessed directly with one command like “Play <song name>.”

The restriction is that the command “Play Song” must be spoken first; the system will then ask for the song name. The reply command would be to say the name of the song to play.

Similar limits exist for album content. If there are more than 4,000 albums, but less than 8,000, the content cannot be accessed directly with one command like, “Play <album name>.” The command “Play Album” must first be spoken; the system will then ask for the album name. The reply would be to say the name of the album to play.

Once the number of songs has exceeded approximately 8,000, there is no support for accessing the songs directly through voice commands. There will still be

access to the media content by using commands for playlists, artists, and genres.

The access commands for playlists, artists, and genres are prohibited after the number of this type of media exceeds 4,000.

The system will provide feedback the first time voice recognition is initiated if it has become apparent that any of these limits are reached during a device initializing process.

Voice Recognition for Navigation

“Navigation” : Begin a dialog to enter specific destination information.

“Navigation Commands” : Begin a dialog to enter specific destination information.

“Destination Address” : Begin a dialog to enter a specific destination address, which includes the entire address consisting of the house number, street name, and city and state.

“Destination Intersection” : Begin a dialog to enter a specific destination intersection.

“Destination Place of Interest” : Begin a dialog to enter a destination Place of Interest category or major brand name (if equipped).

Not all brand names of businesses are available for voice entry. Most major chains, such as chains with more than 20 locations, should be available to search for by name, but the name must be precisely spoken. Nicknames or short names for the businesses will not likely be found. Lesser known businesses might have to be located by category, such as fast food, hotels, or banks.

“Destination Contact” : Begin a dialog to enter a specific destination contact name.

“Cancel Route” : End route guidance.

Voice Recognition for the Phone

“Call <contact name>” : Initiate a call to an entered contact. The command may include location if the contact has location numbers stored.

“Call <contact name> At Home,” “At Work,” “On Mobile,” or “On Other” : Initiate a call to an entered contact and location at home, at work, on mobile device, or on another phone.

“Call <phone number>” : Initiate a call to a standard phone number seven or 10 digits in length.

“Pair Phone” : Begin the Bluetooth pairing process. Follow instructions on the radio display.

“Switch Phone” : Select a different phone for outgoing calls.

“Voice Keypad” : Begins a dialog to enter special numbers like international numbers. The numbers can be entered in groups of digits with each group of digits being repeated back by the system. If the group of digits is not correct, the

command “Delete” will remove the last group of digits and allow them to be re-entered. Once the entire number has been entered, the command “Call” will start dialing the number.

“**Voice Mail**” : Initiate a call to voice mail numbers.

Voice Pass-Thru

Voice pass-thru allows access to the voice recognition commands on the cell phone, for example, Siri or Voice Command. See the mobile phone manufacturer's user guide to see if the mobile phone supports this feature. To activate the phone voice recognition system, press and hold  on the steering wheel for a few seconds.

Phone

Bluetooth (Overview)

The Bluetooth-capable system can interact with many cell phones, allowing:

- Placement and receipt of calls in a hands-free mode.
- Sharing of the cell phone's address book or contact list with the vehicle.

To minimize driver distraction, before driving, and with the vehicle parked:

- Become familiar with the features of the cell phone. Organize the phone book and contact lists clearly and delete duplicate or rarely used entries. If possible, program speed dial or other shortcuts.
- Review the controls and operation of the infotainment system.

- Pair cell phone(s) to the vehicle. The system may not work with all cell phones. See “Pairing” in this section.

Danger

Taking your eyes off the road for too long or too often while using any infotainment feature can cause a crash. You or others could be injured or killed. Do not give extended attention to infotainment tasks while driving. Limit your glances at the vehicle displays and focus your attention on driving. Use voice commands whenever possible.

Warning

It is illegal to touch your phone when driving.

Make sure that Bluetooth® is activated before driving. If not, stop at a safe place to use a mobile phone.

Vehicles with a Bluetooth system can use a Bluetooth-capable cell phone with a Hands-Free Profile to make and receive phone calls. The infotainment system and voice recognition are used to control the system. The system can be used while in ON/RUN or ACC/ACCESSORY. The range of the Bluetooth system can be up to 9.1 m (30 ft). Not all phones support all functions and not all phones work with the Bluetooth system.

Bluetooth Controls

Use the buttons on the infotainment system and the steering wheel to operate the Bluetooth system.

Steering Wheel Controls

 **(Push to Talk)** : Press to answer incoming calls, confirm system information, and start voice recognition.

 **(End Call)** : Press to end a call, decline a call, or cancel an operation. Press to mute or unmute the infotainment system when not on a call.

Infotainment System Controls

For information about how to navigate the menu system using the infotainment controls, see *Using the System* ⇨ 98.

Phone : Touch this screen button on the Home Page to enter the phone main menu.

Audio System

When using the Bluetooth system, sound comes through the vehicle's front audio system speakers and overrides the audio system. Turn the volume knob during a call to change the volume level. The adjusted volume level remains in memory for later calls. The system maintains a minimum volume level.

Bluetooth (Infotainment Controls)

For information about how to navigate the menu system using the infotainment controls, see *Using the System* ⇨ 98.

Pairing

A Bluetooth-enabled cell phone must be paired to the Bluetooth system and then connected to the vehicle before it can be used. See the mobile phone manufacturer's user guide for Bluetooth functions before pairing the mobile phone.

Pairing Information

- A Bluetooth phone with music capability can be paired to the vehicle as a phone and a music player at the same time.
- Up to 10 devices can be paired to the Bluetooth system.
- The pairing process is disabled when the vehicle is moving.
- Pairing only needs to be completed once, unless the pairing information on the mobile phone changes or the mobile phone is deleted from the system.
- One Bluetooth device can be connected to the Bluetooth system at a time.

- If multiple paired cell phones are within range of the system, the system connects to the paired cell phone in the order that they were last used in the system. To link to a different paired phone, see "Linking to a Different Phone" later in this section.

Pairing a Phone

1. Touch the Phone screen button.
2. Select Phone and select Pair Device.
3. A four-digit Personal Identification Number (PIN) appears on the display. The PIN, if required, may be used in Step 5.
4. Start the pairing process on the mobile phone to be paired to the vehicle. See the cell phone manufacturer's user guide for information on this process.
5. Locate "MyLink" on the phone's display. Follow the instructions on the cell phone to enter the PIN provided in Step 3 or confirm the six-digit code

shown on the display. After the PIN is successfully entered or the code is confirmed, the system responds with "<Device name> has been successfully paired" when the pairing process is complete.

6. If "MyLink" does not appear, turn the phone off or remove the phone battery and retry.
7. If the phone prompts to accept connection or allow phone book download, select always accept and allow. The phone book may not be available if not accepted.
8. Repeat Steps 1–7 to pair additional phones.

Listing All Paired and Connected Phones

1. Touch the Phone screen button.
2. Select Phones.

Disconnecting a Connected Phone

1. Touch the Phone screen button.

2. Select Phones.
3. Touch the **X** next to the phone to disconnect and follow the on screen prompts.

Deleting a Paired Phone

Only disconnected phones can be deleted.

1. Touch the Phone screen button.
2. Select Phones.
3. Touch the  next to the phone to delete and follow the on screen prompts.

Linking to a Different Phone

To link to a different phone, the new phone must be in the vehicle and paired to the Bluetooth system.

1. Touch the Phone screen button.
2. Select Phones.
3. Select the new phone to link to from the not connected device list.

Switching to Handset or Handsfree Mode

To switch between handset or handsfree mode, touch the Phone icon on the Home Page to display “Call View.”

- While the active call is hands-free, touch the Handset screen button to switch to the handset mode. The screen button changes to Handsfree once the Bluetooth device confirms it is operating as handset.
- While the active call is handset, touch the Handsfree screen button to switch to the hands free mode. The screen button changes to Handset once the Bluetooth device confirms it is operating as handsfree.

Making a Call Using Contacts and Recent Calls

Calls can be made through the Bluetooth system using personal cell phone contact information for all phones that support the Phone Book feature. Become familiar with

the phone settings and operation. Verify the cell phone supports this feature.

When supported, the Contacts and Recent Calls menus are automatically available.

The Contacts menu accesses the phone book stored in the cell phone.

The Recent Calls menu accesses the recent call list(s) from your cell phone.

To make a call using the Contacts menu:

1. Touch the Phone screen button.
2. Select Contacts.
3. Select the name to call.
4. Select the desired contact number to call.

To make a call using the Recent Calls menu:

1. Touch the Phone screen button.
2. Select Recent.

3. Select the name or number to call.

Making a Call Using the Keypad

To make a call by dialing the numbers:

1. Touch the Phone screen button.
2. Select Keypad and enter a phone number.
3. Select Call to start dialling the number.

Accepting or Declining a Call

When an incoming call is received, the infotainment system mutes and a ring tone is heard in the vehicle.

Accepting a Call

There are a few ways to accept a call:

- Press  on the steering wheel controls.
- Touch Answer on the infotainment display.

Declining a Call

There are a few ways to decline a call:

- Press  on the steering wheel controls.
- Touch Ignore on the infotainment display.

Call Waiting

Call waiting must be supported on the Bluetooth phone and enabled by the phone service carrier to work.

Accepting a Call

There are a few ways to accept a call-waiting call:

- Press  on the steering wheel controls.
- Touch Switch on the infotainment display.

Declining a Call

There are a few ways to decline a call-waiting call:

- Press  on the steering wheel controls.

- Touch Ignore on the infotainment display.

Switching Between Calls (Call Waiting Calls Only)

To switch between calls, touch the phone icon on the Home Page to display "Call View." While in Call View, touch the call information of the call on hold to change calls.

Three-Way Calling

Three-way calling must be supported on the Bluetooth phone and enabled by the phone service carrier to work.

To start a three-way call while in a current call:

1. In the Call View, select Add to add another call.
2. Initiate the second call by selecting from RECENT, CONTACTS, or KEYPAD.
3. When the second call is active, touch Merge to conference the three-way call together.

4. Once all calls are merged, the Merge button becomes an Unmerge button. Touch to unmerge the calls. Some phone service carriers may not allow a merged call to become unmerged.

Ending a Call

- Press  on the steering wheel controls.
- Touch End on the infotainment display to end all existing calls, or touch End next to a call to end only that call.

Some phone service carriers may not allow a merged call to become unmerged.

Dual Tone Multi-Frequency (DTMF) Tones

The in-vehicle Bluetooth system can send numbers during a call. This is used when calling a menu-driven phone system.

1. Touch the Phone screen button.

2. While in the Call View, touch  to raise the Interaction Selector.
3. Select Keypad and enter the number.

Voice Mail

The default voice mail number is the phone number of the currently connected phone. The voice mail number can be changed in Bluetooth settings.

To dial a voice mail number:

1. Touch the Phone screen button.
2. Select Voice Mail.
3. Select Call.
4. Enter the DTMF tones using the keypad if needed.

Bluetooth (Voice Recognition)

Using Bluetooth Voice Recognition

To use voice recognition, press the  button on the steering wheel. Use the commands below for the various voice features. For additional information, say "Help" while in a voice recognition menu. See *Voice Recognition* ⇨ 121 for help using voice recognition commands.

Making a Call

Calls can be made using the following commands.

Using the "Dial" or "Call" Command

To call a number:

1. Press . The system responds "Command Please," followed by a tone.
2. Say "Dial" or "Call" followed by the complete phone number.

Use the "Voice Keypad" command for international numbers or special numbers which include * or #.

Once connected, the person called will be heard through the audio speakers.

To call using a contact from your phone book:

1. Press . The system responds "Command Please," followed by a tone.
2. Say "Dial" or "Call" and then say the contact name. For example "Call John at Work."

Once connected, the person called will be heard through the audio speakers.

Using the "Switch Phone" Command

1. Press . The system responds "Command Please," followed by a tone.
2. After the tone, say "Switch Phone." The system displays a list of phones to select.

Using the “Voice Keypad” Command

1. Press . The system responds “Command Please,” followed by a tone.
2. After the tone, say “Voice Keypad.” The system allows entry of special numbers and characters.

Using the “Voice Mail” Command

1. Press . The system responds “Command Please,” followed by a tone.
2. After the tone, say “Voice Mail.” The system dials the voice mail number of the connected phone.

Clearing the System

Unless information is deleted out of the vehicle Bluetooth system, it will be retained. This includes phone pairing information. For directions on how to delete this information, see “Deleting a Paired Phone.”

Text Messaging

If equipped, the infotainment system may allow text messages to be received and replied to. Received messages can also be read aloud.

Before using the text messaging feature, check to see if the phone is compatible.

See your dealer for details.

Text Menu

Inbox : Touch to display incoming messages. To view a message, press on the name of the sender.

Press  to listen to the text message. Press BACK on the faceplate or press the Back screen button to go back to the previous menu.

Settings : See “Text Settings” later in this section.

Reply : Touch to reply using a predefined text message. See “Text Settings.”

Call : Touch to place a call to the sender of the text message.

Note

- There may be previous configuration required in your mobile to have this function working properly.
- Due to the variety of devices and their firmware versions, your device may respond differently when performing this function.
- Any inquiries regarding your phone functionality, refer to the device manual.

Viewing a Text Message

While viewing a text message:

- Touch Reply to reply using a predefined text message.
- Touch Call to place a call to the sender of the text message.

Viewing Sender Information

If equipped, touch the name of the sender to view sender information if this information matches contact information already stored.

Select a Predefined Message :

Touch to select from a set of quick messages. Touch the message to send.

Predefined Messages

These are short text messages that can be used to send so responses will not have to be typed.

The messages can be deleted or a new message can be added.

To add a new message:

1. Touch Text Settings, then press Manage Predefined Messages.
2. While in the predefined messages list view, select Add New Predefined Message and a keyboard displays.
3. Type a new message and touch the Check button when done to add the message. Press BACK on the faceplate or touch the Back screen button to go back to the predefined messages list.
4. Touch ⊖ to delete a predefined message

Memory Full

This message may display if there is no more room on the phone to store messages.

Text Settings

Text Alerts : When on, this feature will display an alert when a new text message has been received. Touch to turn on or off.

Manage Predefined Messages :

Touch to add, change, or delete predefined messages.

Apple CarPlay and Android Auto

If equipped, Android Auto™ and/or Apple CarPlay™ capability may be available through a compatible smartphone. If available, a PROJECTION icon will appear on the Home Page of the infotainment display.

To use Android Auto and/or Apple CarPlay:

1. Download the Android Auto app to your phone from the Google™ Play store. There is no app required for Apple CarPlay.
2. Connect your Android phone or Apple iPhone by using the compatible phone USB cable and plugging into a USB data port. For best performance, use the device's factory-provided USB cable. Aftermarket or third-party cables may not work.

The PROJECTION icon on the Home Page will change to Android Auto or Apple CarPlay depending on the phone. Android Auto and/or Apple CarPlay may automatically launch upon USB connection. If not, press the Android Auto and/or Apple Carplay icon on the Home Page to launch.

For further information about Android Auto and Apple CarPlay in the vehicle, seek the assistance of your dealer.

Android Auto is provided by Google and is subject to Google's terms and privacy policy. CarPlay is provided by Apple and is subject to Apple's terms and privacy policy. For Android Auto support see <https://support.google.com/androidauto> or Apple CarPlay support at <https://www.apple.com/br/ios/carplay/>. Apple or Google may change or suspend availability at any time.

If Android Auto device is connected while another device was paired, the switch devices pop up message will appear as follows:

"Connecting Android Auto, will disconnect Bluetooth Device (Name)."

Note

For using Android Auto function, the date of Infotainment System should be the same as the Android Auto device.

Note

For your safety, some applications are disabled while your vehicle is in motion.

Note

To end Android Auto, disconnect the phone from the USB port or change the USB setting on the phone .

If Android Auto does not start after plugging a compatible device, certify that the options "Android Auto" and "USB autorun" under settings menu are active.

In some cases, it might be necessary to unpair the phone from the radio before plugging the USB cable to start the Android Auto.

Settings

The Settings menu allows adjustment of different vehicle and radio features. The menu may contain the following:

Time and Date

Touch SET TIME to edit the time and then touch + or – to increase or decrease hours, minutes, and AM or PM. Press 12Hr or 24Hr for 12 or 24 hour clock.

Touch SET DATE to edit the date and then press + or – to increase or decrease month, day, or year.

Touch CLOCK DISPLAY to choose ON or OFF to show the time in the screen.

Language

This will set the display language in the radio, instrument panel, and voice recognition. Press Language and select the appropriate language. Press  to go back to the previous menu.

Valet Mode (If Equipped)

This will lock the infotainment system and steering wheel controls. It may also limit top speed, power, and access to vehicle storage locations (if equipped).

To enable valet mode:

1. Enter a four-digit code on the keypad.
2. Touch Enter to go to the confirmation screen.
3. Re-enter the four-digit code.

Touch LOCK or UNLOCK to lock or unlock the system. Touch  to go back to the previous menu.

Radio

Touch to display the Radio Menu and the following may display:

- **Manage Favourites:** Touch to highlight a favorite to edit. Touch Rename to rename the favorite or Delete to delete it. Touch and hold the station to drag it to a new location. Touch Done to go back to the previous menu.

- **Number of Favorites Shown:** Touch to set the number of favorites to display. Select Auto, 5, 10, 15, 20, 25, 30, 35, 40, 45, 50, 55, or 60. Auto will adjust the number of favorite locations that can be seen. Touch  to go back to the previous menu.
- **Audible Touch Feedback:** This feature adjusts the sound of the touch. This feature can be turned ON or OFF.
- **Auto Volume:** If equipped, this feature adjusts the volume based on the vehicle speed. See *AM-FM Radio* ⇨ 99.
- **Maximum Startup Volume:** This feature sets the maximum startup volume. If the vehicle is started and the volume is greater than this level, the volume is adjusted to this level. To set the maximum startup volume, touch + or – to increase or decrease. Touch  to go back to the previous menu.

Vehicle

1. Press Settings on main screen of Infotainment System.
2. Select Vehicle menu.
3. The following items will display:
 - Climate and Air Quality.
 - Collision / Detection Systems.
 - Comfort and Convenience.
 - Lighting.
 - Power Door Locks.
 - Remote Lock, Unlock, Start.

Climate and Air Quality

- Auto Fan Speed.
 - Select the desired option from the list.
- Auto Rear Demist (if equipped).
 - Select On or Off.

Collision / Detection Systems

- Rear Cross Traffic Alert.
 - Select On or Off.

- Side Blind Spot Alert.
 - Select On or Off.

Comfort and Convenience

- Chime Volume.
 - Press – or + to set the chime volume.
- Auto Wipe in Reverse Gear (If equipped).
 - Select On or Off.

Lighting

- Vehicle Locator Lights.
 - Select On or Off.
- Exit Lighting.
 - Select the desired option from the list.

Power Door Locks

- Auto Door Lock.
 - Select On or Off.

Remote Lock, Unlock, Start

- Remote Unlock Light Feedback.
 - Select Off or Flash Lights.

- Remote Lock Feedback.
 - Select the desired option from the list.
- Remote Door Unlock.
 - Select All Doors or Driver Door.
- Relock Remote Unlocked Doors.
 - Select On or Off.
- Remote Window Operation.
 - Select On or Off.

Bluetooth

From the Bluetooth screen button, the following may be displayed:

- Pair New Device: Touch to add a new device.
- Device Management: Touch to connect to a different phone source, disconnect a phone, or delete a phone.
- Ringtones: Touch to change the ring tone for the specific phone. The phone does not need to be connected to change the ring tone.

- Voice Mail Numbers: This feature displays the voice mail number for all connected phones. The voice mail number may be changed by touching the EDIT button, typing in the new number, and touching SAVE. Touch  to go back to the previous menu.
- Text Message Alerts: This feature will turn text message alerts on or off. Touch Text Message Alerts and then select OFF or ON. Touch  to go back to the previous menu. See *Text Messaging* ⇨ 133.

Voice

From the Voice screen button, the following may be displayed:

- Confidence Threshold: Select Confirm More for a system response to a command. Select Confirm Less for the system to proceed with the command without responding.

- **Prompt Length:** Select Short for brief, direct feedback or Long for more information feedback. Touch  Back to go to the previous menu.
- **Audio Feedback Speed:** Touch Slow, Medium, or Fast for feedback speed. Touch  to go back to the previous menu.
- **Display “What can I say?” Tips:** Touch ON or OFF to change the display tips.

Display

From the Display screen button, the following may be displayed:

- **Calibrate Touchscreen:** Touch to calibrate the touchscreen and follow the prompts. Touch  to go back to the previous menu.
- **Turn Display Off:** Touch to turn the display off. Touch anywhere on the display area or any faceplate button again to turn the display on.

Rear Camera

Touch to display the Rear Camera menu. See “Driver Assistance Systems” in the owner manual.

- **Guidance Lines:** This feature can be turn ON or OFF.
- **Rear Park Assist Symbols:** This feature can be turn ON or OFF.

Return to Factory Settings

Touching Continue restores all factory settings.

Select Return to Factory Settings and the following list may display:

- **Restore Vehicle Settings:** Restores factory vehicle settings. TouchRestore Vehicle Settings. Touch Cancel or Continue. If continue is touched, a confirmation pop-up will appear indicating the vehicle settings have been restored.

- **Clear All Private Data:** If available, use to erase personal private data before loaning or selling the vehicle. TouchClear All Private Data. Touch Cancel or Continue. Touch the  Back screen button to go back to the last menu.
- **Restore Radio Settings:** Restores factory radio settings. TouchRestore Radio Settings. Touch Cancel or Continue. If continue is touched, a confirmation pop-up will appear indicating the radio settings have been restored.

Press  BACK on the faceplate or touch the Back screen button to go back to the main settings menu.

Trademarks and License Agreements

Trademarks and Licence Agreements

Made for



iPod



iPhone

"Made for iPod," and "Made for iPhone," mean that an electronic accessory has been designed to connect specifically to iPod or iPhone, respectively, and has been certified by the developer to meet Apple performance standards. Apple is not responsible for the operation of this device or its compliance with safety and regulatory standards. Please note that the use of this accessory with iPod or iPhone may affect wireless performance. iPhone®, iPod®, iPod classic®, iPod nano®, iPod shuffle®,

and iPod touch® are trademarks of Apple Inc., registered in the U.S. and other countries.

Android Auto is a trademark of Google Inc.; Apple CarPlay is a trademark of Apple Inc.

RMVB



Portions of this software are included under license from RealNetworks, Inc. Copyright 1995-2012, RealNetworks, Inc. All rights reserved

Bluetooth®

The Bluetooth word mark and logos are owned by the Bluetooth® SIG, Inc. and any use of such marks by General Motors is under license. Other trademarks and trade names are those of their respective owners.

Schedule I: Gracenote EULA (if equipped)



Music recognition technology and related data are provided by Gracenote®. Gracenote is the industry standard in music recognition technology and related content delivery. For more information visit www.gracenote.com.

Music-related data from Gracenote, Inc., copyright © 2000 to present Gracenote. Gracenote Software, copyright © 2000 to present Gracenote. One or more patents owned by Gracenote may apply to this product and service. See the Gracenote website for a non-exhaustive list of applicable Gracenote patents. Gracenote, CDDb, MusicID, MediaVOCS, the Gracenote logo and logotype, and

the "Powered by Gracenote" logo are either registered trademarks or trademarks of Gracenote in the United States and/or other countries.

Gracenote Terms of Use

This application or device contains software from Gracenote, Inc. of Emeryville, California ("Gracenote"). The software from Gracenote (the "Gracenote Software") enables this application to do disc or file identification and obtain music-related information, including name, artist, track, and title information ("Gracenote Data") from online servers or embedded databases (collectively, "Gracenote Servers") and to perform other functions. You may use Gracenote Data only by means of the intended End-User functions of this application or device.

This application or device may contain content belonging to Gracenote's providers. If so, all of the restrictions set forth herein with respect to Gracenote Data shall also apply to such content and such

content providers shall be entitled to all of the benefits and protections set forth herein that are available to Gracenote.

You agree that you will use Gracenote Data, the Gracenote Software, and Gracenote Servers for your own personal non-commercial use only. You agree not to assign, copy, transfer or transmit the Gracenote Software or any Gracenote Data to any third party. **YOU AGREE NOT TO USE OR EXPLOIT GRACENOTE DATA, THE GRACENOTE SOFTWARE, OR GRACENOTE SERVERS, EXCEPT AS EXPRESSLY PERMITTED HEREIN.**

You agree that your non-exclusive license to use the Gracenote Data, the Gracenote Software, and Gracenote Servers will terminate if you violate these restrictions. If your license terminates, you agree to cease any and all use of the Gracenote Data, the Gracenote Software, and Gracenote Servers. Gracenote reserves all rights in Gracenote Data, the Gracenote Software, and the Gracenote

Servers, including all ownership rights. Under no circumstances will Gracenote become liable for any payment to you for any information that you provide. You agree that Gracenote may enforce its rights under this Agreement against you directly in its own name.

The Gracenote service uses a unique identifier to track queries for statistical purposes. The purpose of a randomly assigned numeric identifier is to allow the Gracenote service to count queries without knowing anything about who you are. For more information, see the web page for the Gracenote Privacy Policy for the Gracenote service.

The Gracenote Software and each item of Gracenote Data are licensed to you "AS IS." Gracenote makes no representations or warranties, express or implied, regarding the accuracy of any Gracenote Data. Gracenote reserves the right to delete data from the Gracenote Servers or to change data categories for any cause that Gracenote deems sufficient. No warranty is made that the Gracenote

Software or Gracenote Servers are error-free or that functioning of Gracenote Software or Gracenote Servers will be uninterrupted. Gracenote is not obligated to provide you with new enhanced or additional data types or categories that Gracenote may provide in the future and is free to discontinue its services at any time.

GRACENOTE DISCLAIMS ALL WARRANTIES EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE, TITLE, AND NON-INFRINGEMENT. GRACENOTE DOES NOT WARRANT THE RESULTS THAT WILL BE OBTAINED BY YOUR USE OF THE GRACENOTE SOFTWARE OR ANY GRACENOTE SERVER. IN NO CASE WILL GRACENOTE BE LIABLE FOR ANY CONSEQUENTIAL OR INCIDENTAL DAMAGES OR FOR ANY LOST PROFITS OR LOST REVENUES.

© 2014. Gracenote, Inc. All Rights Reserved.

MPEG4-AVC (H.264)

THIS PRODUCT IS LICENSED UNDER THE AVC PATENT PORTFOLIO LICENSE FOR THE PERSONAL AND NON-COMMERCIAL USE OF A CONSUMER TO (i) ENCODE VIDEO IN COMPLIANCE WITH THE AVC STANDARD ("AVC VIDEO") AND/OR (ii) DECODE AVC VIDEO THAT WAS ENCODED BY A CONSUMER ENGAGED IN A PERSONAL AND NON-COMMERCIAL ACTIVITY AND/OR WAS OBTAINED FROM A VIDEO PROVIDER LICENSED TO PROVIDE AVC VIDEO. NO LICENSE IS GRANTED OR SHALL BE IMPLIED FOR ANY OTHER USE. ADDITIONAL INFORMATION MAY BE OBTAINED FROM MPEG LA, LLC. SEE [HTTP://WWW.MPEGLA.COM](http://WWW.MPEGLA.COM).

VC-1

THIS PRODUCT IS LICENSED UNDER THE VC-1 PATENT PORTFOLIO LICENSE FOR THE

PERSONAL AND NON-COMMERCIAL USE OF A CONSUMER TO (i) ENCODE VIDEO IN COMPLIANCE WITH THE VC-1 STANDARD ("VC-1 VIDEO") AND/OR (ii) DECODE VC-1 VIDEO THAT WAS ENCODED BY A CONSUMER ENGAGED IN A PERSONAL AND NON-COMMERCIAL ACTIVITY AND/OR WAS OBTAINED FROM A VIDEO PROVIDER LICENSED TO PROVIDE VC-1 VIDEO. NO LICENSE IS GRANTED OR SHALL BE IMPLIED FOR ANY OTHER USE. ADDITIONAL INFORMATION MAY BE OBTAINED FROM MPEG LA, LLC. SEE [HTTP://WWW.MPEGLA.COM](http://WWW.MPEGLA.COM).

MPEG4-Visual

USE OF THIS PRODUCT IN ANY MANNER THAT COMPLIES WITH THE MPEG-4 VISUAL STANDARD IS PROHIBITED, EXCEPT FOR USE BY A CONSUMER ENGAGING IN PERSONAL AND NON-COMMERCIAL ACTIVITIES.

MP3

MPEG Layer-3 audio coding technology licensed from Fraunhofer IIS and Thomson.

WMA

This product is protected by certain intellectual property rights of Microsoft. Use or distribution of such technology outside of this product is prohibited without a license from Microsoft.

For more information on the Software, including any open source software license terms (and available source code) as well as copyright attributions applicable to the Runtime Configuration indicated above, please contact the Manufacturer or contact QSSC at 175 Terence Matthews Crescent, Kanata, Ontario, Canada K2M 1W8 (licensing@qnx.com).

Map End User License Agreement**END USER TERMS**

The Map Data Disc ("Data") is provided for your personal, internal use only and not for resale. It is protected by copyright, and is subject to the following terms (this "End User License Agreement") and conditions which are agreed to by you, on the one hand, and HERE North America, LLC ("HERE") and its licensors (including their licensors and suppliers) on the other hand.

The Data for areas of Canada includes information taken with permission from Canadian authorities, including: © Her Majesty the Queen in Right of Canada, © Queen's Printer for Ontario, © Canada Post Corporation, GeoBase®.

HERE holds a nonexclusive license from the United States Postal Service® to publish and sell ZIP+4® information.

© United States Postal Service® 2014. Prices are not established, controlled, or approved by the United States Postal Service®. The following trademarks and registrations are owned by the USPS: United States Postal Service, USPS, and ZIP+4.

TERMS AND CONDITIONS

Personal Use Only: You agree to use this Data for the solely personal, noncommercial purposes for which you were licensed, and not for service bureau, timesharing or other similar purposes. Except as otherwise set forth herein, you agree not to otherwise reproduce, copy, modify, decompile, disassemble or reverse engineer any portion of this Data, and may not transfer or distribute it in any form, for any purpose, except to the extent permitted by mandatory laws. You may transfer the Data and all accompanying materials on a permanent basis if you retain no copies and the recipient agrees to the terms of this End User License Agreement. Multi-disc sets may only

be transferred or sold as a complete set as provided to you and not as a subset thereof.

Restrictions

Except where you have been specifically licensed to do so by HERE and without limiting the preceding paragraph, you may not (a) use this Data with any products, systems, or applications installed or otherwise connected to or in communication with vehicles capable of vehicle navigation, positioning, dispatch, real time route guidance, fleet management or similar applications; or (b) with, or in communication with, including without limitation, cellular phones, palmtop and handheld computers, pagers, and personal digital assistants or PDAs.

Warning

This Data may contain inaccurate or incomplete information due to the passage of time, changing circumstances, sources used, and the nature of collecting

comprehensive geographic data, any of which may lead to incorrect results.

No Warranty

This Data is provided to you "as is," and you agree to use it at your own risk. HERE and its licensors (and their licensors and suppliers) make no guarantees, representations, or warranties of any kind, express or implied, arising by law or otherwise, including but not limited to, content, quality, accuracy, completeness, effectiveness, reliability, fitness for a particular purpose, usefulness, use or results to be obtained from this Data, or that the Data or server will be uninterrupted or error free.

Disclaimer of Warranty

THE DATABASE IS PROVIDED ON AN "AS IS" AND "WITH ALL FAULTS BASIS" AND BOSCH (AND THEIR LICENSORS AND SUPPLIERS) EXPRESSLY DISCLAIM ALL OTHER WARRANTIES, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF

NON-INFRINGEMENT, MERCHANTABILITY, SATISFACTORY QUALITY, ACCURACY, TITLE AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE. NO ORAL OR WRITTEN ADVICE OR INFORMATION PROVIDED BY BOSCH (OR ANY OF THEIR LICENSORS, AGENTS, EMPLOYEES, OR THIRD PARTY PROVIDERS) SHALL CREATE A WARRANTY, AND YOU ARE NOT ENTITLED TO RELY ON ANY SUCH ADVICE OR INFORMATION. THIS DISCLAIMER OF WARRANTIES IS AN ESSENTIAL CONDITION OF THIS AGREEMENT.

Disclaimer of Liability

HERE AND ITS LICENSORS (INCLUDING THEIR LICENSORS AND SUPPLIERS) SHALL NOT BE LIABLE TO YOU IN RESPECT OF ANY CLAIM, DEMAND OR ACTION, IRRESPECTIVE OF THE NATURE OF THE CAUSE OF THE CLAIM, DEMAND OR ACTION ALLEGING ANY LOSS, INJURY OR DAMAGES, DIRECT OR INDIRECT, WHICH MAY RESULT

FROM THE USE OR POSSESSION OF THIS DATA; OR FOR ANY LOSS OF PROFIT, REVENUE, CONTRACTS OR SAVINGS, OR ANY OTHER DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES ARISING OUT OF YOUR USE OF OR INABILITY TO USE THIS DATA, ANY DEFECT IN THIS DATA, OR THE BREACH OF THESE TERMS OR CONDITIONS, WHETHER IN AN ACTION IN CONTRACT OR TORT OR BASED ON A WARRANTY, EVEN IF HERE OR ITS LICENSORS HAVE BEEN ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES. Some States, Territories, and Countries do not allow certain liability exclusions or damages limitations, so to that extent the above may not apply to you.

Export Control

You agree not to export from anywhere any part of the Data provided to you or any direct product thereof except in compliance with, and with all licenses and approvals required

under, applicable export laws, rules and regulations. Entire Agreement: These terms and conditions constitute the entire agreement between HERE (and its licensors, including their licensors and suppliers) and you pertaining to the subject matter hereof, and supersedes in their entirety any and all written or oral agreements previously existing between us with respect to such subject matter.

Governing Law

The above terms and conditions shall be governed by the laws of the State of Illinois, without giving effect to (i) its conflict of laws provisions, or (ii) the United Nations Convention for Contracts for the International Sale of Goods, which is explicitly excluded. You agree to submit to the jurisdiction of the State of Illinois for any and all disputes, claims, and actions arising from or in connection with the Data provided to you hereunder.

Government End Users

If the Data is being acquired by or on behalf of the United States government or any other entity seeking or applying rights similar to those customarily claimed by the United States government, this Data is a "commercial item" as that term is defined at 48 C.F.R. ("FAR") 2.101, is licensed in accordance with this End User License Agreement, and each copy of Data delivered or otherwise furnished shall be marked and embedded as appropriate with the following "Notice of Use," and be treated in accordance with such Notice:

The logo for HERE, consisting of the word "here" in a bold, lowercase, sans-serif font, tilted at an angle.

Maps for Life

NOTICE OF USE

CONTRACTOR (MANUFACTURER/
SUPPLIER)

NAME:

HERE North America, LLC

CONTRACTOR (MANUFACTURER/
SUPPLIER)

ADDRESS:

**425 West Randolph Street,
Chicago, IL 60606.**

This Data is a commercial item as defined in FAR 2.101 and is subject to the End User License Agreement under which this Data was provided.

© 2014 HERE North America, LLC.
All rights reserved.

If the Contracting Officer, federal government agency, or any federal official refuses to use the legend provided herein, the Contracting Officer, federal government agency, or any federal official must notify HERE North America, LLC prior to seeking additional or alternative rights in the Data.

Unicode

Copyright © 1991-2014 Unicode, Inc. All rights reserved. Distributed under the Terms of Use in <http://www.unicode.org/copyright.html>.

Free Type Project

Portions of this software are copyright © 2014 The FreeType Project (<http://www.freetype.org>). All rights reserved.

Open Source SW

The open source code used in this device can be downloaded at the webpage shown in the information at the center stack display. Further information concerning the OSS licenses is shown in the center stack display.

QNX

Portions of this software are copyright © 2008-2014, QNX Software Systems. All rights reserved.

Part C – EULA

Copyright 2014, Software Systems GmbH & Co. KG. All Rights Reserved.

The product you have purchased ("Product") contains Software (Runtime Configuration No. 505962; "Software") which is distributed by or on behalf of the Product manufacturer "Manufacturer") under license from Software Systems Co. ("QSSC"). You may only use the Software in the Product and in compliance with the license terms below.

Subject to the terms and conditions of this License, QSSC hereby grants you a limited, non-exclusive, non-transferable license to use the Software in the Product for the purpose intended by the Manufacturer. If permitted by the Manufacturer, or by applicable law, you may make one backup copy of the Software as part of the Product software. QSSC and its licensors reserve all license+C31 rights not expressly granted herein, and retain all right, title and interest in and to

all copies of the Software, including all intellectual property rights therein. Unless required by applicable law you may not reproduce, distribute or transfer, or de-compile, disassemble or otherwise attempt to unbundle, reverse engineer, modify or create derivative works of, the Software. You agree: (1) not to remove, cover or alter any proprietary notices, labels or marks in or on the Software, and to ensure that all copies bear any notice contained on the original; and (2) not to export the Product or the Software in contravention of applicable export control laws.

EXCEPT TO THE EXTENT OTHERWISE REQUIRED BY APPLICABLE LAW, QSSC AND ITS LICENSORS PROVIDE THE SOFTWARE ON AN "AS IS" BASIS, WITHOUT WARRANTIES OR CONDITIONS OF ANY KIND, EITHER EXPRESS OR IMPLIED INCLUDING, WITHOUT LIMITATION, ANY WARRANTIES OR CONDITIONS OF TITLE, NON-INFRINGEMENT,

MERCHANTABILITY OR FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE. ANY WARRANTIES OR OTHER PROVISIONS OFFERED BY THE MANUFACTURER OR ITS DISTRIBUTOR(S) THAT DIFFER FROM THIS LICENSE ARE OFFERED BY THE MANUFACTURER OR ITS DISTRIBUTOR(S) ALONE AND NOT BY QSSC, ITS AFFILIATES OR THEIR LICENSORS. YOU ASSUME ANY RISKS ASSOCIATED WITH YOUR USE OF THE SOFTWARE UNDER THIS LICENSE.

EXCEPT TO THE EXTENT OTHERWISE REQUIRED BY APPLICABLE LAW (SUCH AS IN THE CASE OF DELIBERATE OR GROSSLY NEGLIGENT ACTS), IN NO EVENT SHALL QSSC, ITS AFFILIATES OR THEIR LICENSORS BE LIABLE TO YOU UNDER ANY LEGAL THEORY, WHETHER IN TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE), CONTRACT OR OTHERWISE, FOR DAMAGES, INCLUDING ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, SPECIAL, INCIDENTAL,

OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES OF ANY CHARACTER ARISING AS A RESULT OF THIS LICENSE OR OUT OF THE USE OR INABILITY TO USE THE PRODUCT (INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO DAMAGES FOR LOSS OF GOODWILL, WORK STOPPAGE, PRODUCT FAILURE OR MALFUNCTION, OR ANY AND ALL OTHER COMMERCIAL DAMAGES OR LOSSES), EVEN IF QSSC, ITS AFFILIATES OR THEIR LICENSORS HAVE BEEN ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES.

WMA

This product is protected by certain intellectual property rights of Microsoft. Use or distribution of such technology outside of this product is prohibited without a license from Microsoft.

For more information on the Software, including any open source software license terms (and available source code) as well as copyright attributions applicable to the Runtime Configuration indicated

above, please contact the Manufacturer or contact QSSC at 175 Terence Matthews Crescent, Kanata, Ontario, Canada K2M 1W8 (licensing@qnx.com).

Linotype

Helvetica is a trademark of Linotype Corp. registered in the U.S. Patent and Trademark Office and may be registered in certain other jurisdictions in the name of Linotype Corp. or its licensee Linotype GmbH.

Usage in text form of each of the Licensed Trademarks is:

The trademark attribution requirements for the Licensed Trademarks may be viewed at <http://www.linotype.com/2061-19414/trademarks.html>.

END USER NOTICE

The marks of companies displayed by this product to indicate business locations are the marks of their respective owners. The use of such marks in this product does not imply any sponsorship, approval, or endorsement by such companies of this product.

Introduction

Infotainment

Two infotainment systems are available.

This section describes the infotainment system without built-in Navigation system. For the system with built-in Navigation, see *Introduction* ➔ 95.

Note

Some functions of the Infotainment System may not be compatible with all phones or smartphones available in the market. Such features also depend on the connection with the internet and the service offered by phone companies and apps availability.

Read the following pages to become familiar with these features.

Warning

Taking your eyes off the road for too long or too often while using any infotainment feature can cause a crash. You or others could be injured or killed. Do not give extended attention to infotainment tasks while driving. Limit your glances at the vehicle displays and focus your attention on driving. Use voice commands whenever possible.

Warning

It is illegal to touch your phone when driving.

Make sure that Bluetooth® is activated before driving. If not, stop at a safe place to use a mobile phone.

The infotainment system has built-in features intended to help avoid distraction by disabling some functions when driving. These

functions may grey out when they are unavailable. Many infotainment features are also available through the steering wheel controls.

Before driving:

- Become familiar with the operation, faceplate buttons, and screen buttons.
- Set up the audio by pre-setting favourite stations, setting the tone, and adjusting the speakers.
- Set up phone numbers in advance so they can be called easily by touching a single button or by using a single voice command if equipped with Bluetooth phone capability.

Theft-Deterrent Feature

The infotainment system has an electronic security system installed to prevent theft.

The infotainment system only works in the vehicle in which it was first installed, and cannot be used in another vehicle.

Overview

1. 
 - Press to turn the power on.
 - Press and hold to turn the power off.
 - Press to mute the system when on.
 - Turn to decrease or increase the volume.
2. 
 - Radio: Press to automatically search for available radio stations with good reception.

- USB/Bluetooth Music/Movies/Pictures: Press to go to the next content. Press and hold to fast forward.

3. ⏮

- Radio: Press to automatically search for available radio stations with good reception.
- USB/Bluetooth Music/Movies/Pictures: Press to go to the previous content. Press and hold to fast rewind.

4. 🏠

- Press to go to the Home Page. See *Home Page* ⇨ 149.

5. 📞

- Press this button to access the Phone screen. (If there is no connected phone, the monitor will show the Device Management Menu to allow you to connect a

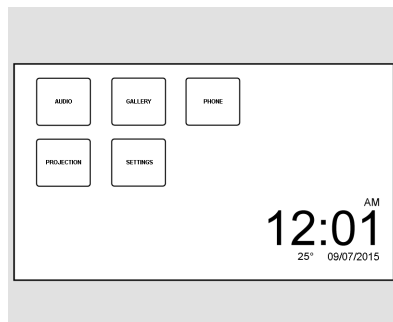
previously paired phone or establish a new Bluetooth enabled phone connection.)

Home Page

Touchscreen Buttons

Touchscreen buttons show on the screen when available. When a function is unavailable, the button may gray out. When a function is selected, the button may highlight.

Home Page Features



Press 🏠 to go to the Home Page.

Audio : Touch to select AM, FM, USB/iPod/Bluetooth Audio, or AUX.

Gallery : Touch to view a picture or watch a movie.

Phone : Touch to activate the phone features (if equipped). See *Bluetooth (Voice Recognition)* ⇨ 132 or *Bluetooth (Overview)* ⇨ 127 or *Bluetooth (Infotainment Controls)* ⇨ 128.

Projection : Touch to access supported devices when connected. See *USB Port* ⇨ 103.

Settings : Touch to access the Settings menu. See *Operation* ⇨ 151.

Edit Mode

In edit mode, the home page can be rearranged.

1. Press 🏠 on the control panel.
2. Press and hold the any menu to enter the edit mode.
3. Drag and drop the desired menu to change the position.
4. Press 🏠 to exit the edit mode.

Note

- The edit mode exits after a timeout of inactivity of 30 seconds.
- If you drag and drop the menu on the arrow, the menu will be arranged on the previous or next page.
- The maximum number of edit mode pages is three.

Steering Wheel Controls (If equipped)



1. Volume button

- Move the button upward to VOL + button to increase the volume.
- Move the button downward to - button to decrease the volume.

2. button

- Press this button to decline an incoming call or end a current call.
- Press this button to mute or unmute the infotainment system when not on a call.

3. button

- When there is no connected Bluetooth device, the Infotainment system executes the Bluetooth device connection.
- When there is a connected Bluetooth device, press the button to answer the call or enter the redial selection mode.

If the customer's connected phone supports Speech Recognition, press and hold the button to activate the phone's SR (Speech recognition) mode.

- If an iPhone is connected, press and hold to enter the Siri function.

4. (seek)

- When   are pressed up/down.

In Radio modes, changes broadcast frequencies saved.

In USB/iPod/Bluetooth audio modes, changes the file.

- When   are pressed and held.

In USB/iPod/Bluetooth audio modes, rewind or fast forward the file.

Operation

Radio Controls

The infotainment system is operated by using the pushbuttons, menus shown on the display, and steering wheel controls.

Turning the System On or Off

 : Press to turn the radio on. Press and hold to turn the radio off.

Automatic Switch-Off

If the infotainment system has been turned on after the ignition is turned off, the system will turn off automatically after 10 minutes.

If the ignition is turned off and the user opens the driver door of the vehicle, the system is turned off automatically.

Volume Control

 : Turn to increase or decrease. Press when the system is on to mute and unmute the system.

Note

When changing the audio source, a difference in volume may be experienced.

Settings

Auto Volume

This feature automatically adjusts the radio volume to compensate for road and wind noise.

The level of volume compensation can be selected, or the feature can be turned off.

1. Press , then touch Settings.
2. Touch Radio.
3. Select Auto Volume.
4. Select the desired setting.
5. Touch  to go back to the source screen.

Tone Settings

1. Press , then touch Settings.
2. Touch Radio.
3. Touch Tone Settings.

4. Select a Preset tone setting or a Custom tone setting and the Fader/Balance:

Preset

- Talk, Rock, Jazz, Pop, Country, Classical, or Custom.

Custom

- Bass, Midrange, or Treble: Touch – or +.

Fader or Balance

- Adjust the front/rear or left/right speakers by dragging the dot in the vehicle image on the screen.

5. Touch  to go back to the source screen.

Setting the 12/24 Hour Format

1. Press , then touch Settings.
2. Touch Time and Date, then select 12h or 24h format.
3. Touch .

Setting the Month and Day Format

1. Press , then touch Settings.
2. Touch Time and Date, then Set Date Format.
3. Select DD/MM/YYYY (day/month/year), MM/DD/YYYY (month/day/year), or YYYY/MM/DD (year/month/day) format.
4. Touch .

Setting the Time and Date

1. Press , then touch Settings.
2. Touch Time and Date, then Set Time or Set Date.
3. Touch + or - to adjust the value.
4. Touch  or  to adjust AM or PM for 12 hour format.
5. Touch  to go back to the source screen.

Manage Favorites

1. Press , then touch Settings.

2. TouchRadio.
3. Touch Manage Favourites, then select the number of favorite list on the radio screen.

Audible Touch Feedback

1. Press , then touch Settings.
2. TouchRadio.
3. Turn on or off the Audible Touch Feedback.

Text Scroll

1. Press , then touch Settings.
2. TouchRadio.
3. Turn on or off the Text Scroll.

Maximum Startup Volume

1. Press , then touch Settings.
2. TouchRadio.
3. Touch Maximum Startup Volume, then set between 13 to 37.

Language

1. Press , then touch Settings.
2. TouchLanguage.

3. Select language displayed on the Infotainment system.

Vehicle

1. Press , then touch Settings.
2. TouchVehicle.
3. Touch the desired item:
 - Comfort and Convenience: Set Chime volume
 - Lighting: Set the desired Vehicle Locator Lights and Exit Lighting timing.
 - Power Door Locks: Turn Auto Door Lock on or off.
 - Remote Lock, Unlock, Start:
 - Remote Unlock Light Feedback: Select Off or Flash Lights.
 - Remote Lock Feedback: Select the desired option from the list.
 - Remote Door Unlock: Select All Doors or Driver Door
 - Relock Remotely Unlocked Doors: Select on or off.

- Remote Window Operation: Select on or off.

Bluetooth

1. Press , then touch Settings.
2. TouchBluetooth.
3. Touch the desired item:
 - Device Information: Check the device information.
 - Device management: Select the desired device and connect/disconnect or delete.
 - Change Pairing PIN: Manually change/set the PIN code.
 - Ringtones: Change the ringtone.
 - Sort Order: Change the sorting order of contacts. (First/Last or Last/First)
 - Voice Mail Numbers: Change the voice mail number.

Apple CarPlay (If available)

1. Press , then touch Settings.
2. TouchApple CarPlay.
3. Select on or off.

Android Auto (If available)

1. Press , then touch Settings.
2. TouchAndroid Auto.
3. Select on or off.

Note

Even though you set the Projection feature "Off", connecting the device and pressing the projection feature on home screen will display pop up message as following: "While active, New device will be displayed on this screen".

USB Auto Launch

1. Press , then touch Settings.
2. TouchUSB Auto Launch.

3. Select on or off.
 - On: If you connect the device through USB port, it will be launched automatically.
 - Off: If you connect the device through USB port, it will not be launched automatically.

Rear Camera (If equipped)

The Rear Camera menu is available in vehicles which has Rear Vision Camera (RVC) option. (Vehicles produced with Rear Vision Camera).

1. Press , then touch Settings.
2. TouchRear Camera.
 - Guidance Lines: Select the Guidance Lines feature to turn on or off.
 - Rear Park Assist Symbols: Select the Rear Park Assist Symbols feature to turn on or off.

Return to Factory Settings

1. Press , then touch Settings.
2. Touch Return to Factory Settings.
 - Restore Vehicle Settings:
Restore all vehicle settings.
 - Clear All Private Data:
Clear all private data from the system.
 - Restore Radio Settings:
Restore all radio settings.

Radio

AM-FM Radio

Playing the Radio

 : Press to go to the Home Page.

 : Press to turn on, mute, or unmute the system. Press and hold to turn off the system.

Selecting a Band

1. Press .
2. Touch AUDIO.
3. Touch Source.
4. Select AM, FM, DAB, USB, Bluetooth or AUX input.

The last station that was playing starts playing again.

Selecting a Station

Seek Tuning

If the radio station is not known:

Press  or  to automatically search for available radio stations.

Direct Tune

From the AM or FM menu:

1. Touch Tune.
2. Enter the station number.
3. Touch Go.

Favorite

1. Touch  or  to scroll through the favorite pages.
2. Touch the station to select it.

Station List

1. From the AM or FM menu, touch Menu.
2. Select Station List.
3. Touch  or  to scroll through the list. Touch the station to select it.

Update Station List

- From the AM or FM menu, touch Menu, then touch Update Station List. The broadcasting list updating will begin.
- During the AM or FM broadcasting list update, touch Cancel to stop the updates.

RDS

Setting the RDS function in the FM radio RDS supported.

- From the FM menu, turn on or off the RDS.

Menu

Touch to choose between available menus for the current source.

Storing a Station as a Favorite

Stations from all bands can be stored in any order in the favorite pages.

Up to 25 stations can be stored.

Storing Stations

To store the station to a position in the list, touch the corresponding button 1–5 until a beep is heard.

1. Select the desired station.
2. Touch < or > to select the desired page of saved favorites.

3. Touch and hold any of the preset buttons to save the current radio station to that button of the selected favorites page.

To change a preset button, tune to the new desired radio station and touch and hold the preset button.

Radio Reception

Frequency interference and static can occur during normal radio reception if items such as mobile phone chargers, vehicle convenience accessories, and external electronic devices are plugged into the accessory power outlet. If there is interference or static, unplug the item from the accessory power outlet.

FM

FM signals only reach about 16 to 65 km (10 to 40 mi). Although the radio has a built-in electronic circuit that automatically reduces interference, some static can occur,

especially around tall buildings or hills, causing the sound to fade in and out.

AM

The range for most AM stations is greater than for FM, especially at night. The longer range can cause station frequencies to interfere with each other. Static can occur when things like storms and power lines interfere with radio reception. When this happens, try reducing the treble on the radio.

Cell Phone Usage

Cell phone usage, such as making or receiving phone calls, charging, or just having the phone on may cause static interference in the radio. Unplug the phone or turn it off if this happens.

Radio Reception**Digital audio broadcasting**

Digital audio broadcasting (DAB) is an innovative and universal broadcasting system.

DAB Radio

Listening to DAB radio

1. Press  on the control panel.
2. TouchAUDIO.
3. TouchSource.
4. Select DAB on the screen. The DAB radio of the most recent listened station is displayed.

Searching for broadcasting automatically

Press  or  on the control panel to automatically search for available station with good reception

Storing a broadcasting as a Favorite

1. Select the desired station.
2. Touch  or  to select the desired page of saved favorites.
3. Touch and hold any of the preset buttons to save the current radio station to that button of the selected favorites page.

Up to 5 favorites pages can be saved, and each page can store up to five radio station.

To change a preset button, tune to the new desired radio station and touch and hold the preset button.

Listening to PRESET button directly

1. Touch  or  to select the desired page of saved favorites.
2. Touch any of the preset buttons to directly listen to the radio station saved to that button.

General operation of the menu

1. Touch Menu on the DAB radio screen.
2. Touch the desired menu to select the relevant item or to display the item's detailed menu.

Categories

1. From the DAB menu, press theCategories to display the DAB category list. The DAB category list information is displayed.
2. Touch  or  to scroll through the list. Touch the station to select it.

Note

In case of the DAB mode, only the selected category is displayed in the category list.

Update Station List

1. From the DAB menu, press theUpdate Station List to display the update DAB station list. The DAB broadcasting list update will proceed.
2. During the DAB broadcasting list update, press Cancelto stop it from saving changes.

DAB Announcements

1. From the DAB menu, find the RDS by touching  or .

2. Select the desired option. (All, News, Weather, Sports, Finance, Travel, Event, Special, Radio info, Warning, Traffic, Alarm)

DAB Settings

- L Band

Note

Additional L-Band frequencies may not be used

- Intellitext

Note

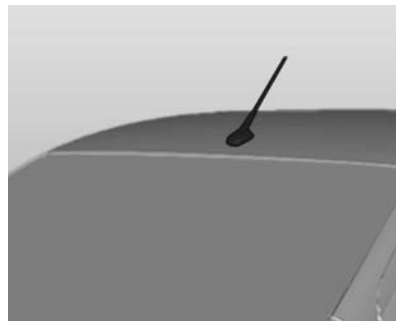
Some countries may not support this feature

- DAB to DAB Linking (if available): If the current DAB broadcasting is disconnected, find the same DAB broadcasting automatically.
- DAB to FM Linking (if available): If the current DAB broadcasting is disconnected, find the same FM broadcasting automatically.

To configure the DAB settings options:

1. From the DAB menu, find the desired setting by touching ▲ or ▼.
2. Select on or off.

Fixed Mast Antenna



To remove the roof antenna, rotate it anticlockwise. To install the roof antenna, rotate it clockwise.

Caution

To avoid damaging the antenna or the roof panel, be sure to remove the antenna before entering the automatic car wash or a place with a low ceiling.

Install the antenna firmly.

Whenever using the roof rack system, check if the antenna is not obstructing the area that is being used by the roof rack system or the cargo.

Audio Players

USB Port

Using the USB Port

The infotainment system can play music or movies by connecting a device to the USB port.

USB Support

If equipped, the USB connector is in the front of the center console, and uses the USB 2.0 standard.

Not all iPods and USB drives are compatible with the USB port.

Make sure the iPod has the latest firmware from Apple® for proper operation. iPod firmware can be updated using the latest iTunes® application. See www.apple.com/br/itunes.

For help with identifying your iPod, go to www.apple.com/br/support.

The USB port can play both lower and upper case .mp3, .wma, .ogg, and .wav files stored on a USB storage device.

USB Supported Folder Structure

The infotainment system supports up to 15 stages of folder structure.

Connecting a USB Storage Device or iPod/iPhone

To connect a USB storage device, connect the device to the USB port.

To connect an iPod/iPhone, connect one end of the device's cable to the iPod/iPhone and the other end to the USB port.

The iPod/iPhone charges while it is connected to the vehicle if the ignition is in position 1 or 2. See *Starting the Engine* ⇨ 185. When the vehicle is turned off, the iPod/iPhone automatically powers off and will not charge or draw power from the vehicle's battery.

For more information on USB usage, see "Audio System Information" under later in this section.

USB Port (Audio System)

The infotainment system can play the music files contained in the USB storage device or iPod/iPhone products.

Audio System Information

Using MP3/WMA/OGG/WAV Files

- Music files with .mp3, .wma, .ogg, and .wav file name extensions can be played.
- MP3 files that can be played: Bit rate: 8 kbps to 320 kbps. Sampling frequency: 48 kHz, 44.1 kHz, 32 kHz, 24 kHz, 22.05 kHz, and 16 kHz.
- Files with a bit rate above 128 kbps will result in higher quality sound.
- ID3 Tag information for MP3 files, such as the album name and the artist, can be displayed.
- To display album title, track title, and artist information, the file should be compatible with the ID3 Tag V1 and V2 formats.

Using USB Storage Devices and iPod/iPhone

- Use a USB or flash memory type storage device. Do not connect using a USB adaptor.
- Do not connect and reconnect the USB device repeatedly in a short time, as this may cause static electricity and problems using the device.
- Use a USB device with a metal connecting terminal.
- Connection with i-Stick Type USB storage devices may be faulty due to vehicle vibration.
- Do not touch the USB connecting terminal.
- The time it takes to process files will depend on the USB storage device type and capacity, and the type of files stored.
- Some USB storage device files may not be compatible.
- Up to two USB devices and one iPod can be played through a USB hub. All devices may not be supported, depending on the performance of the USB hub. If there is not enough power supply, it may not operate normally.
- Do not disconnect the USB storage device while it is playing. This may cause damage to the product or affect the performance of the USB device.
- Disconnect the USB storage device when the ignition is turned off. If the ignition is turned on while the USB device is connected, the USB device may be damaged or may not operate normally.
- USB storage devices can only be connected for playing music/movies and viewing photo files.
- Do not use the USB terminal to charge USB accessory equipment. The heat generated may cause performance issues or damage.
- Music files to which Digital Right Management (DRM) is applied cannot be played.
- Some iPod/iPhone product models may not support the connectivity or functionality of this product.
- Only connect the iPod/iPhone with connection cables supported by iPod/iPhone products. Other connection cables cannot be used.
- The iPod/iPhone may be damaged if it is connected to the vehicle with the ignition on. When not in use, disconnect the iPod/iPhone.
- When the iPod/iPhone is connected to the USB port with an iPod/iPhone cable, Bluetooth music is not supported.
- The iPod/iPhone playback functions and the information displayed may be different when played on the infotainment system.

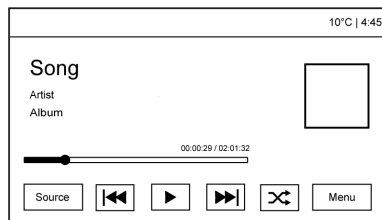
	Step 1	Step 2	Step 3	Step 4
Playlist	Playlist	Songs		
Artists	Artists	Albums	Songs	
Albums	Albums	Songs		
Songs	Songs			
Genres	Genres	Artists	Albums	Songs
Composer	Composer	Albums	Songs	
Audiobooks	Tracks			

- Refer to the table for the classification items related to the search function provided by the iPod/iPhone.

USB Player

Playing Music from a USB Device

- Connect the USB device to the USB port.
- Play will start automatically after the system has finished reading the USB device.
- If a non-readable USB device is connected, an error message displays and the system will switch to the previous audio function.



If the USB device is already connected:

- Press .
- TouchAUDIO.
- TouchSource.
- TouchUSB.

To stop the USB device and select another media source, touch Source, then select the other source.

To remove the USB device, select another function, then remove the USB device.

Pause

- Touch  to pause.
- Touch  to resume.

Changing to Next/Previous Files

- Touch  to change to the next file.
- Touch  within five seconds of the playback time to play the previous file.

Returning to the Beginning of the Current File

Touch  after five seconds of the playback time.

Scanning Forwards or Backwards

Touch and hold  or  during playback to rewind or fast forward. Release the button to resume playback at normal speed.

Playing a File Randomly

Touch  during playback.

- ON : Plays all files randomly.
- OFF : Returns to normal playback.

Using the USB Music Menu

- Touch Menu during playback.
- Touch the desired menu.

Browse Music

1. TouchBrowse Music.
2. Touch the desired music.

Tone Settings

- TouchTone Settings. The Tone Settings menu is displayed. See “Tone Settings” under “Radio Controls” in *Operation* ⇨ 151.

Auto Volume

- TouchAuto Volume. The Auto Volume menu is displayed. See “Auto Volume” under “Radio Controls” in *Operation* ⇨ 151.

MTP (Media Transfer Protocol)

- Connect a MTP supported device.
- Play will start automatically after the system has finished reading the MTP device.
- If a non-readable MTP device is connected, an error message displays and the system will switch to the previous audio function.

iPod/iPhone Player

This feature is limited to models supporting the iPod/iPhone connection.

Playing Music Files

- Connect the iPod/iPhone to the USB port.
- Play will start from the previously played point after the system has finished reading the USB device.
- If a non-readable USB device is connected, an error message displays and the system will switch to the previous audio function.

If the iPod/iPhone is already connected:

1. Press .
2. TouchAUDIO.
3. TouchSource.
4. TouchiPod.

To stop the device and select another media source, touch Source, then select the other source.

To remove the device, select another function, then remove the device.

Pause

- Touch  to pause.
- Touch  to resume.

Changing to Next/Previous Song

- Touch  to change to the next song.
- Touch  within three seconds of the playback time to play the previous file.

Returning to the Beginning of the Current File

Touch  after three seconds of the playback time.

Scanning Forwards or Backwards

Touch and hold  or  during playback to rewind or fast forward. Release the button to resume playback at normal speed.

Playing a File Randomly

Touch  during playback.

- ON: Plays all files randomly.
- OFF: Returns to normal playback.

Using the iPod Menu

- Touch Menu during playback.
- Touch the appropriate play mode.

Browse Music

1. TouchBrowse Music.
2. Touch the desired music.

Tone Settings

- TouchTone Settings. The Tone Settings menu is displayed. See "Tone Settings" under "Radio Controls" in *Operation* ⇨ 151.

Auto Volume

- TouchAuto Volume. The Auto Volume menu is displayed. See "Auto Volume" under "Radio Controls" in *Operation* ⇨ 151.

USB Port (Picture System)

The infotainment system can view picture files stored on a USB storage device and devices that support Media Transfer Protocol (MTP).

Picture System Information

- Supported file extensions: .jpg, .bmp, .png, .gif.
- Animated GIF files are not supported.
- Some files may not operate due to a different recording format or the condition of the file.

Viewing Pictures

1. Connect the USB device to the USB port.
2. Touch the screen to open to full screen. Touch the screen again to return to the previous screen.

If the compatible USB device is already connected:

1. Press .
2. TouchGALLERY.

3. Touch .

Some features are disabled while the vehicle is in motion.

Viewing a Slide Show

1. Touch  from the picture screen.
2. Touch the screen to cancel the slide show during the slide show playback.

Viewing a Previous or Next Picture

Touch  or  from the picture screen.

Rotating a Picture

Touch  from the picture screen.

Enlarging a Picture

Touch  from the picture screen.

Using the USB Picture Menu

1. Touch MENU from the picture screen.

2. Touch the appropriate menu:
 - Slide Show Time: Allows selection of the slide show interval.
 - Clock, Temp. Display: Allows selection of On or Off to show the clock and temperature on the full screen.
 - Display Settings: Adjusts for Brightness and Contrast.
3. Touch  to exit.

USB Port (Movie System)

The infotainment system can play movie files stored on a USB storage device and devices that support Media Transfer Protocol (MTP).

Movie System Information

- Available resolution: Lower than 1280 x 720 (W x H) pixels.
- Frame rate: Less than 30 fps.
- Playable movie file: mp4. The playable movie file may not be played according to the codec format.

- Playable codec format: H.264 codec.
- Playable Audio format: MP3, AC3, AAC, WMA.
- Max video bitrate:
 - mpeg-1: 8 Mbps
 - mpeg-4 (mpg4, mp42, mp43): 4 Mbps
- Max audio bitrate:
 - mp3: 320 Kbps
 - wma: 320 Kbps
 - ac-3: 640 Kbps
 - aac: 449 Kbps
- Movie files to which Digital Right Management (DRM) is applied may not be played.

Playing a Movie File

1. Connect the USB device to the USB port.
2. Touch the screen to open to full screen. Touch the screen again to return to the previous screen.

If the USB device is already connected:

1. Press .
2. Touch GALLERY.
3. Touch .

Movie is not available while driving.

Pause

- Touch  to pause.
- Touch  to resume.

Changing to Next/Previous Movie

- Touch  to change to the next file.
- Touch  within five seconds of the playback time to play the previous file.

Returning to the Beginning of the Current Movie

Touch  after five seconds of the playback time.

Scanning Forwards or Backwards

Touch and hold ◀ or ▶ during playback to rewind or fast forward. Release the button to resume playback at normal speed.

Viewing Full Screen

Touch  from the movie screen.

Touch  again to return to the previous screen.

Using the USB Movie Menu

1. Touch MENU from the movie screen.
2. Touch the appropriate menu:
 - Tone Settings: shows the sound setup. See “Tone Settings” in *Operation* ⇨ 151.
 - Auto Volume: Automatically adjusts the volume according to the speed of the vehicle. See “Auto Volume” in *Operation* ⇨ 151.

- Clock Temp. Display: Allows selection of On or Off to show the clock and temperature on the full screen.
 - Display Settings: Adjusts for brightness and contrast.
3. Touch  to exit.

Auxiliary Devices

Using the Auxiliary Input Jack

Settings menus and functions may vary depending on vehicle options.

If equipped, the auxiliary input jack can be used to connect external audio devices such as an iPod®, iPhone®, MP3 player, CD player, and other supported devices for use as another source for audio listening. This input jack is not an audio output; do not plug headphones into the front auxiliary input jack.

If equipped with auxiliary input jack the infotainment system can play music connected by the auxiliary device.

Playing Music

To play music from the device, if the device is already connected:

1. Press .
2. Touch AUDIO.
3. Touch Source.
4. Touch AUX.
5. Touch .

To adjust the tone settings, see “Preset Tone Settings” and “Custom Tone Settings” under “System Settings” in *Operation* ⇨ 151.

Phone

Bluetooth (Overview)

If equipped with Bluetooth[®] capability, the system can interact with many Bluetooth phones, PDAs, or other devices to:

- Place and receive hands-free calls.
- Transmit hands-free data.
- Play audio streaming files.

The device must be paired first. See "Pairing" later in this section.

To minimize driver distraction, before driving, and with the vehicle parked:

- Become familiar with the features of the cell phone. Organize the phone book and contact lists clearly and delete duplicate or rarely used entries. If possible, program speed dial or other shortcuts.
- Review the controls and operation of the infotainment system.

- Pair cell phone(s) to the vehicle. The system may not work with all cell phones. See "Pairing" later in this section.

Danger

Taking your eyes off the road for too long or too often while using any infotainment feature can cause a crash. You or others could be injured or killed. Do not give extended attention to infotainment tasks while driving. Limit your glances at the vehicle displays and focus your attention on driving. Use voice commands whenever possible.

Warning

It is illegal to touch your phone when driving.

Make sure that Bluetooth[®] is activated before driving. If not, stop at a safe place to use a mobile phone.

Vehicles with a Bluetooth system can use a Bluetooth-capable cell phone with a Hands-Free Profile to make and receive phone calls. The infotainment system is used to control the system. The system can be used while in ignition position 1 or 2. See *Starting the Engine* ⇨ 185. Not all phones support all functions and not all phones work with the Bluetooth system.

There may be restrictions on using Bluetooth wireless technology in some locations.

Due to the variety of Bluetooth devices and their firmware versions, the device may respond differently when performing over Bluetooth.

Bluetooth (Infotainment Controls)

To use infotainment controls to access the menu system, see *Overview* ⇨ 95.

Pairing

A Bluetooth-enabled cell phone must be paired to the Bluetooth system and then connected to the

vehicle before it can be used. See your mobile phone manufacturer's user guide for Bluetooth functions before pairing the mobile phone.

Pairing Information

- A Bluetooth phone with MP3 capability cannot be paired to the vehicle as a phone and an MP3 player via USB port at the same time.
- Up to 10 cell phones can be paired to the Bluetooth system.
- Pairing only needs to be completed once, unless the pairing information on the mobile phone changes or the mobile phone is deleted from the system.
- Only one paired mobile phone can be connected to the Bluetooth system at a time.
- If multiple paired cell phones are within range of the system, the system connects to the first available paired cell phone in the order that they were first paired.

When the Bluetooth device and infotainment system are successfully paired, the phone book is downloaded automatically. This is dependent on the type of phone paired. If the automatic download does not occur, proceed with the phone book download on the phone.

Pairing a Phone – SSP and No Paired Device

When there is no paired device on the infotainment system and Simple Secure Pairing (SSP) is supported:

1. Press .
2. Touch PHONE or press  on the steering wheel.
3. Touch Search Device.
4. Touch the desired device to pair on the searched list screen.
5. Touch Yes on the pop-up screen of the Bluetooth device and infotainment system.

6. When the Bluetooth device and infotainment system are successfully paired, the phone functions are displayed on the infotainment system.

Pairing a Phone – SSP and Paired Device

When a paired device is on the infotainment system and SSP is supported:

1. Press .
2. Touch Settings.
3. Touch Bluetooth, then Device Management.
4. Touch the desired device to pair. When the Bluetooth device and infotainment system are successfully paired, the device name is highlighted on the pair device screen. If no desired device is available go to Step 5.
5. Touch Search Device to search for the desired device.
6. Touch the desired device to pair on the searched list screen.

7. Touch Yes on the pop-up screen of the Bluetooth device and infotainment system.
- The connected phone is highlighted by .
-  /  indicates the hands-free and phone music functions are enabled.
-  indicates only the hands-free function is enabled.
-  indicates only Bluetooth music is enabled.

Pairing a Phone – No SSP and No Paired Device

When there is no paired device on the infotainment system and SSP is not supported:

1. Press .
2. Touch PHONE or press  on the steering wheel.
3. Touch Search Device.
4. Touch the desired device to pair on the searched list screen.

5. Input the Personal Identification Number (PIN) code (default: 1234) to the Bluetooth device. When the Bluetooth device and infotainment system are successfully paired, the phone functions are displayed on the infotainment system.

If the connection fails, a failure message is displayed on the infotainment system.

If a Bluetooth device was previously connected, the infotainment system executes the auto connection. However, if the Bluetooth setting on the Bluetooth device is turned off, a failure message is displayed on the infotainment system.

Pairing a Phone – No SSP and Paired Device

When a paired device is on the infotainment system and SSP is not supported:

1. Press .
2. Touch Settings.

3. Touch Bluetooth, then Device Management.
4. Touch the desired device to pair. When the Bluetooth device and infotainment system are successfully paired, the device name is highlighted on the pair device screen. If no desired device is available go to Step 5.
5. Touch Search Device to search for the desired device.
6. Touch the desired device to pair on the searched list screen.
7. Input the Personal Identification Number (PIN) code (default: 1234) to the Bluetooth device. When the Bluetooth device and infotainment system are successfully paired, the device name is highlighted on the pair device screen.
-  /  indicates the hands-free and phone music functions are enabled.

-  indicates only the hands-free function is enabled.
-  indicates only Bluetooth music is enabled.

Connecting a Paired Bluetooth Device

1. Press .
2. TouchSettings.
3. Touch Bluetooth, then Device Management.
4. Touch the device to be connected.

Checking the Bluetooth Connection

1. Press .
2. TouchSettings.
3. Touch Bluetooth, then Device Management.
4. The paired device will show highlighted.

Disconnecting a Bluetooth Device

1. Press .
2. TouchSettings.

3. Touch Bluetooth, then Device Management.
4. Touch the name of the device to be disconnected.
5. TouchDisconnect.

Deleting a Bluetooth Device

1. Press .
2. TouchSettings.
3. Touch Bluetooth, then Device Management.
4. Touch the device to delete.
5. Touch .
6. TouchDelete.

Note

If the device to be deleted is connected, the disconnecting procedure needs to be performed previously to the deleting procedure.

Bluetooth Music

Before playing Bluetooth music, read the following information:

- A cell phone or Bluetooth device that supports Advanced Audio Distribution Profile (A2DP)

versions over 1.2 must be registered and connected to the vehicle.

- From the cell phone or Bluetooth device, find the Bluetooth device type to set/connect the item as a stereo headset.
-  will appear on the screen if the stereo headset is successfully connected.
- The sound played by the Bluetooth device is delivered through the infotainment system.
- Bluetooth music can be played only when a Bluetooth device has been connected. To play Bluetooth music, connect the Bluetooth phone to the infotainment system.
- If the Bluetooth device is disconnected while playing phone music, the music is discontinued. The audio streaming function may not be supported in some Bluetooth phones. Only one function can be used at a time between the Bluetooth hands-free or Phone

music function. For example, if you convert to Bluetooth hands-free while playing Phone music, the music is discontinued. Playing music from the car is not possible when there are no music files stored in the cell phone.

Note

Verify the volume of your phone and its music player. If it is too low, you might not be able to hear the Bluetooth music.

Note

Depending on the phone device and/or player used, the music name might not be displayed while playing the music.

Playing Bluetooth Music

1. Press .
2. TouchAUDIO.
3. TouchSource.
4. TouchBluetooth.

Pause

Touch  to pause.

Touch  to resume.

Playing the Next Song

Touch .

Playing the Previous Song

Touch  within approximately two seconds of playback time to play the previous song.

Returning to the Beginning of the Current Song

Touch  after approximately two seconds of playback time.

Search

Touch and hold  or  to rewind or fast forward.

Playing Music Randomly

Touch  during playback. Touch again to return to normal play.

This function may not be supported depending on the Bluetooth device.

Do not change the track too quickly when playing Bluetooth music.

Conditions that may occur when playing Bluetooth music:

- It takes time to transmit data from the Bluetooth device to the infotainment system.
- If the cell phone or Bluetooth device is not in the waiting screen mode, it may not automatically play.
- The infotainment system transmits the order to play from the Bluetooth device in the Bluetooth music play mode. If this is done in a different mode, then the device transmits the order to stop. Depending on the Bluetooth device options, this order to play/stop may take time to activate.
- If the Bluetooth music playback is not functioning, then check to see if the Bluetooth device is in the waiting screen mode.
- Sounds may be cut off during the Bluetooth music playback.

- The infotainment system outputs the audio from the cell phone or Bluetooth device as it is transmitted.

Hands-Free Phone

General Information

Vehicles with a Hands-Free Phone system can use a Bluetooth-capable cell phone with a hands-free profile to make and receive phone calls. The infotainment system and voice control are used to operate the system. Not all phones support all functions and not all phones work with the Hands-Free Phone system.

Hands-Free Phone Controls

Use the buttons on the infotainment system and the steering wheel to operate the Hands-Free Phone system.

Steering Wheel Controls (if equipped)

Steering wheel controls can be used to:

- Answer incoming calls.

- Confirm system information.
- End a call.
- Decline a call.
- Cancel an operation.
- Make outgoing calls using the call list.

 : Press to answer incoming calls.

 : Press to end a call, decline a call, or cancel an operation.

Making a Call by Entering a Phone Number

- Press , then touch PHONE on the screen.
- Press  on the steering wheel.

If a wrong number is entered, touch  to delete the number one digit at a time, or touch and hold  to delete all digits of the number.

Switching a Call to the Cell Phone (Private Mode)

To switch the call from the cell phone to hands-free:

1. Touch .

2. Touch  again to switch back to hands-free.

Turning the Microphone On and Off

Touch  to turn the microphone on or off.

Calling by Redial

To call by using redial:

- Press  on the steering wheel controls to display the redial guidance screen.
- Touch  on the phone screen.

Redialling is not possible when there is no call history.

Taking Calls

When a phone call comes through the connected Bluetooth cell phone, the audio system will be muted or paused and the phone will ring with the relevant information displayed.

Press  on the steering wheel controls or touch  on the screen.

To decline the call, press  on the steering wheel controls or touch  on the screen.

Using the Contacts Menu

1. Touch Contacts on the phone screen.
2. Touch ▲ or ▼ to scroll through the list.
3. Touch the phone book entry to call.
4. If there is more than one number associated with the name, touch the number to dial.

Note

When the Bluetooth of your cell phone and the radio are successfully paired, the phone book is downloaded automatically. But the phone book may not be downloaded automatically according to the type of the phone. In this case, use the phone book on your phone. We recommend that you “Always” accept the Phone book connection request on the initial pairing of the phone.

If there is a connected Bluetooth device previously, the Infotainment system executes the auto connection. But if the Bluetooth setting on your device is turned off, failure message is displayed on the Infotainment system.

Searching for Contacts Entries

1. Touch Contacts on the phone screen.
2. Touch  on the contacts screen.
3. Use the keypad to input the name to search. For details, see “Searching for a Name” following.
4. Touch the phone book entry to call.
5. If there is more than one number associated with the name, touch the number to dial.

When the Bluetooth device and infotainment system are successfully paired, the phone book will download. Some phones may not download automatically. If this

happens, connect it again or proceed with the phone book download on the phone.

Searching for a Name

Select characters by using the keypad on the phone book screen. As characters are selected, the names that include those characters will display on the phone book screen. As more characters of the name are entered, the list of possible names is shortened.

To search for the name Alex:

1. Touch (abc) to select the first character.
2. Touch (jkl) to select the second character.
3. Touch (def) to select the third character.
4. Touch (wxy) to select the fourth character.

Making a Call from Call History

1. Touch Call History on the phone screen.

2. Touch one of the following for:
 -  All calls history.
 -  Dialed calls.
 -  Missed calls.
 -  Received calls.
3. Select the contact entry to call.

Making a Call with Speed Dial Numbers

Touch and hold the speed dial number using the keypad on the phone screen.

Only speed dial numbers already stored on the cell phone can be used for speed dial calls. Up to two-digit speed dial numbers are supported.

For two-digit speed dial numbers, press and hold the second digit to make a call to the speed dial number.

Hands-Free Phone (Apple CarPlay and Android Auto)

Apple CarPlay and Android Auto

For more information see *Apple CarPlay and Android Auto* ⇨ 134

Trademarks and License Agreements

Trademarks and Licence Agreements



The Bluetooth word mark and logos are owned by the Bluetooth® SIG, Inc. and any use of such marks by General Motors is under license. Other trademarks and trade names are those of their respective owners.



DivX Certified® to play DivX® video, including premium content.

Covered by one or more of the following U.S. patents: 7,295,673; 7,460,668; 7,515,710; 7,519,274.

DivX®, DivX Certified® and associated logos are trademarks of Rovi Corporation or its subsidiaries and are used under license.



“Made for iPod” and “Made for iPhone” mean that an electronic accessory has been designed to connect specifically to iPod or iPhone respectively, and has been certified by the developer to meet Apple performance standards. Apple is not responsible for the operation of this device or its compliance with safety and regulatory standards. Please note that the use of this accessory with iPod, iPhone may affect wireless performance.

iPod and iPhone are trademarks of Apple Computer, Inc., registered in the U.S. and other countries.

Android Auto is a trademark of Google Inc.; Apple CarPlay is a trademark of Apple Inc.

Climate Controls

Climate Control Systems

Climate Control Systems	174
Electronic Climate Control System	176

Air Vents

Adjustable Air Vents	178
Fixed Air Vents	179

Maintenance

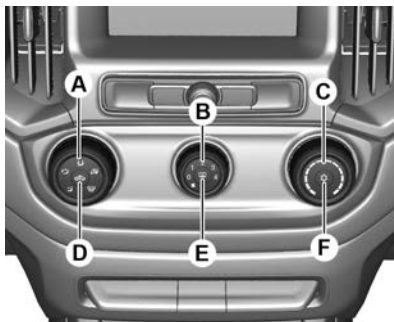
Air Intake	179
Passenger Compartment Air Filter	179
Air Conditioning Regular Operation	180

Climate Control Systems



Warning

Do not sleep in a vehicle with the air conditioning or heating system on. It may cause serious harm or death due to a drop in oxygen content and/or body temperature.



Controls for:

- Air distribution (A)
- Fan speed (B)

- Temperature (C)
- Air recirculation (D)
- Heated rear window (E)
- Air conditioning (F)

Temperature

Adjust the temperature by turning the knob (C).

Blue : Cold

Red : Warm

Air Distribution

Select air outlet by turning the knob (A).

: To head area via adjustable air vents

: To head area and foot well

: To foot well

: To windscreen and foot well

: Demisting and defrosting

Fan Speed

Adjust the air flow by turning the knob (B) to the desired speed.

Heated Rear Window

Operated by pressing the  button (E), see *Heated Rear Window* ⇨ 29.

Air Recirculation System

The air recirculation mode is operated with the  button (D).

Use recirculation system whenever you need to cool down the air faster and for maximum cooling. Use it also whenever driving on dusty or smelly roads, to reduce particles and odors to penetrate the passenger compartment.

Warning

Driving in recirculation mode for a prolonged period of time can make you sleepy. Periodically turn to the outside air mode for fresh air.

The exchange of fresh air is reduced in air recirculation mode. In operation without cooling, the

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

air humidity increases, so the windows may mist up. The quality of the passenger compartment air deteriorates and may cause the vehicle occupants to feel drowsy.

Air conditioning

Press button  (F). Air conditioning is functional only when the engine and fan are running.

The air conditioning system cools and dehumidifies (dries) when outside temperature is a little above the freezing point. Therefore condensation may form and drip from under the vehicle.

If no cooling or drying is required, switch the air conditioning system off to save fuel.

The air conditioning will not operate when the fan control knob (B) is in the 0 position.

Even though the air conditioning is turned on  (F), the vehicle will produce warm air if the temperature knob is set in the red area.

To turn off the air conditioning system, press the  button (F) again or turn the fan knob (B) to 0.

If the air conditioning system  (F) is on and you turn the fan knob (B) to 0, the air conditioning system remains on but inactive, since the fan is on 0. When you turn it back to motion, the air conditioning will work again.

Warning

It is recommended to service the climate control systems by a Holden Dealership Network or Authorized Repair Shop. Improper service methods may cause personal injury.

Normal Cooling

- Operate the air conditioning system  (F).

- Turn the temperature control knob (C) to the blue area for cooling.
- Turn the air distribution knob (A) to the desired position.
- Adjust the fan control knob (B) to the desired speed.

Maximum Cooling

Briefly open the windows so that the hot air can disperse quickly.

- Switch on air conditioning ☀ (F).
- Press button  (D) to activate air recirculation.
- Turn the air distribution knob (A) to position .
- Set temperature control knob (C) to the coldest level.
- Set fan speed knob (B) to the highest level.
- Open all the vents.

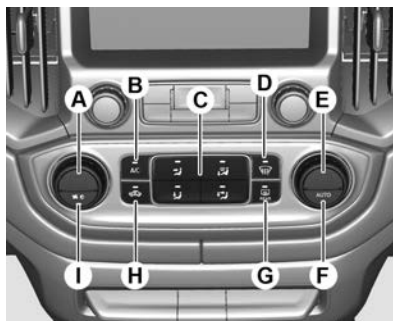
Indication of Settings

The selected functions are indicated by the LED of the activated button.

Electronic Climate Control System

Warning

Do not sleep in a vehicle with the air conditioning or heating system on. It may cause serious harm or death due to a drop in oxygen content and/or body temperature.



Controls for:

- Fan speed (A).
- Air conditioning (B).
- Air distribution (C).

- Demisting and defrosting (D).
- Temperature (E).
- Heated rear window (G).
- Air recirculation (H).

AUTO : Automatic mode, all settings except temperature are chosen automatically by the system (F).

 /  : System ON/OFF (I).

Temperature

Set temperature to the desired value by turning the knob (E).

Blue : Cold.

Red : Warm.

If the minimum temperature is set, the climate control system runs at maximum cooling.

Heating

- Turn the temperature control knob (E) to the red area for heating.
- Select the air distribution (C) to the desired position.

- Turn the fan control knob (A) to the desired speed.

Maximum Heating

Use the maximum heating mode for quick heating.

- Turn the temperature control knob (E) all the way to the red area for heating.
- Turn the fan control knob (A) to maximum speed.

Air Distribution

Press the respective button for desired adjustment, the setting of air distribution is indicated on the Info-Display.

 : To windscreen and foot well.

 : To foot well.

 : To head area via adjustable air vents.

 : To head area via adjustable air vents and foot well.

Fan Speed

Adjust the air flow by turning the fan knob (A) to the desired speed.

Demisting and Defrosting the Windows

- Press button  (D).
- Recirculation will switch to fresh air.
- Air distribution and fresh air are set automatically.

The air conditioning will be automatically switched on.

Switch on heated rear window  (G).

See *Heated Rear Window* ⇨ 29.

Air Recirculation System

The air recirculation mode is operated with the  (H) button. When activated, external air inlet is closed and internal air is recirculated within the cabin.

To speed up the cool down and reach the desired temperature faster, if not in the **AUTO** mode, the air recirculation function is recommended.

Warning

The exchange of fresh air is reduced in air recirculation mode. In operation without cooling, the air humidity increases, so the windows may mist up. The quality of the passenger compartment air deteriorates, which may cause the vehicle occupants to feel drowsy.

Air conditioning

Activate or deactivate with the **A/C** (B) button. The air conditioning is only functional when the engine and Climate Control System are running.

The air conditioning system cools and dehumidifies (dries) when outside temperature is above a specific level. Therefore condensation may form and drip from under the vehicle.

Even though the air conditioning is turned on, the vehicle will produce warm air if the temperature knob is set in the red area.

If no cooling or drying is required, switch the cooling system off to save fuel.

Automatic Mode AUTO

Basic setting for maximum comfort:

- Press **AUTO** button, the air conditioning is activated automatically.
- Open all air vents.
- Set preselected temperature turning knob (E).

All air vents are actuated automatically in automatic mode. The air vents should therefore always be open.

The following functions can be adapted manually, however, the system will no longer function in automatic mode.

- Fan speed (A).
- Air conditioning (B).
- Air distribution (C).
- Demisting and defrosting (D).
- Air recirculation (H).
- Power  (I).

The preselected temperature is automatically regulated. In the automatic mode, the fan speed and air distribution automatically regulate the air flow.

The system can be manually adapted by the use of air distribution and fan speed controls.

Each change of settings is indicated in the Info-Display.

Activated functions are also indicated by the LED in the button in some cases.

The electronic climate control system is only fully operational when the engine is running.

Do not cover the sensor on the instrument panel for correct operation.

Manual Settings

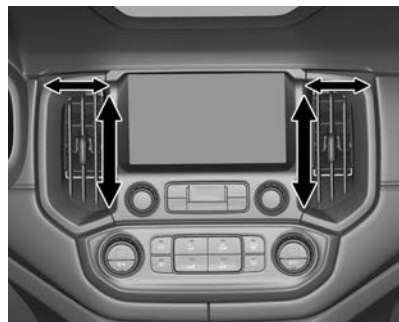
Climate control system settings can be changed by activating the buttons and turning the rotary knobs. Changing a setting can deactivate the automatic mode.

To return to automatic mode, press **AUTO** button (F).

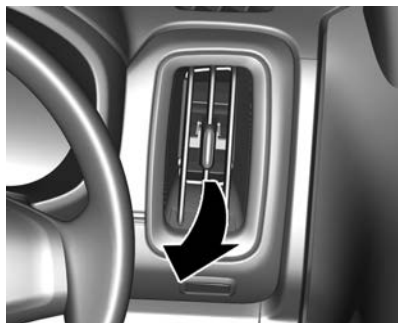
Air Vents

Adjustable Air Vents

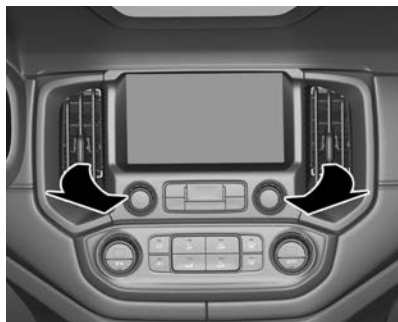
At least one air vent must be open while cooling is on in order to prevent the evaporator from icing up due to lack of air movement.



Push the slat up to open and down to close the vent or to adjust the air amount.



Direct the air flow by tilting and swivelling the slats.



Warning

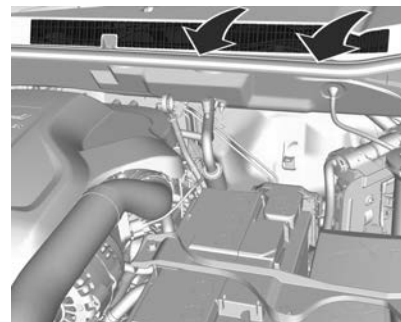
Do not attach any objects to the slats of the air vents. Risk of damage and injury in case of an accident.

Fixed Air Vents

Additional air vents are located beneath the windscreen, door windows and in the foot wells.

Maintenance

Air Intake



Outside air is drawn into the vehicle through the opening between the bonnet and the windscreen.

Keep the area clear of debris.

Passenger Compartment Air Filter

The filter removes contaminants such as pollen and dust from the air entering the vehicle.

Maintenance of the pollen filter is required. Refer to the Service/Warranty Booklet.

Air Conditioning Regular Operation

To ensure efficient performance, switch the air conditioning system on for a few minutes once a month, even in winter.

Driving and Operating

Driving Information

Driving Environment	182
Steering	182
Off-Road Driving	183
Hill and Mountain Roads	184

Starting and Operating

New Vehicle Break-In	184
Ignition Positions	184
Starting the Engine	185
Starting the Diesel Engine	185
Parking	186

Engine Exhaust

Engine Exhaust	187
----------------------	-----

Diesel Particulate Filter

Diesel Particulate Filter	187
---------------------------------	-----

Automatic Transmission

Automatic Transmission	189
Transmission Display	189
Shift Lever	189
Manual Mode	190
Electronic Driving	
Programs	190
Fault	190

Interruption of Power Supply	190
------------------------------------	-----

Manual Transmission

Manual Transmission	191
---------------------------	-----

Drive Systems

Four-Wheel Drive	192
------------------------	-----

Brakes

Brakes	196
Antilock Brake System (ABS)	196
Parking Brake	197
Brake Assist	197
Hill Start Assist (HSA)	197

Ride Control Systems

Traction Control System (TCS)	198
Electronic Stability Control (ESC)	198
Descent Control System (DCS)	199

Cruise Control

Cruise Control	201
----------------------	-----

Object Detection Systems

Forward Collision Alert (FCA) System	203
Parking Assist	205
Rear Vision Camera (RVC) ...	208

Lane Departure Warning (LDW)	210
------------------------------------	-----

Fuel

Fuel	212
Filling the Tank	213

Trailer Towing

Trailer Towing	215
Trailer Sway Control (TSC) ...	218

Conversions and Add-Ons

Add-On Electrical Equipment	219
-----------------------------------	-----

Driving Information

Driving Environment

Before entering the vehicle

Check that windows, mirrors and lamps are clean.

Visually check tyre inflation. Check tyre pressures weekly.

Before driving off

1. Close and secure all doors.
2. Position the seat for comfortable driving.
3. Adjust rear view mirrors.
4. Fasten seat belts.
5. Check that warning indicators illuminate when turning the ignition on. See *Instrument Panel Overview* ⇨ 61.

Brakes

- Do not let the vehicle run down hills or coast with the engine off, as the power assistance does not operate.

- Ensure that there are no obstructions that could limit brake pedal use.
- Continuous or heavy use of brakes will shorten the life of the brake pads.
- See *Antilock Brake System (ABS)* ⇨ 196.

Loose Articles

Do not leave loose articles or luggage in the passenger compartment. Secure in the rear load area.

Warning

Portable gas cylinders can leak, creating a risk of fire or explosion.

As a precaution, ensure adequate ventilation when carrying gas cylinders.

They must be restrained from rolling around and where possible, placed in the rear load compartment of the vehicle.

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

It is recommended that if gas cylinders are frequently transported that a purpose-built carrying compartment be used.

Ensure any transportation of gas cylinders complies with the applicable regulations.

Steering

Electric Power Steering

The vehicle has electric power steering. It does not have power steering fluid. Regular maintenance is not required.

If the assistance is lost due to a system malfunction, the vehicle can be steered, but may require increased effort.

See your dealer if there is a problem.

If the steering wheel is turned until it reaches the end of its travel and is held against that position for an extended period of time, power steering assist may be reduced.

If the power steering is used for an extended period of time, the assistance may be reduced.

Normal use of the power steering assist should return when the system cools down.

See specific vehicle steering messages under *Steering System Messages* ⇨ 80. See your dealer if there is a problem.

Off-Road Driving

Before driving off-road:

- Check the fuel level. *Fuel* ⇨ 212.
- Check spare tyre pressure. See *Tyre Pressure* ⇨ 270.
- Check fluids levels. See *Engine Compartment Overview* ⇨ 226.

While driving off-road:

- Be alert to unexpected restrictions.

- Be aware of uncommon noises from the tyres and the engine.
- Always drive at a speed at which you are able to maintain control of the vehicle.

Caution

When driving off-road, sudden motion and manoeuvres can make you lose control of the steering. This could cause a collision. Therefore, when driving on-road and off-road, you and your passengers should wear seat belts.

After driving off-road:

- Remove any debris from under the vehicle or bonnet. It may become a fire hazard.
- After driving through mud or sand, clean and check the brake linings.
- Check the body frame, steering, suspension, wheels, tyres, exhaust system, fuel lines and cooling system.

Note

Regular off-road driving requires more frequent maintenance.

Water Crossing

Before crossing water:

- Switch off the air-conditioning.
- Do not attempt to drive through water more than 600 mm deep.
- Never drive into fast-running water. The force of the water can easily move the vehicle sideways, possibly into deeper water.
- Drive very slowly through deep water. Driving too fast may cause water to enter the engine and cause major damage.
- Immediately after driving through deep water, drive slowly and check the brake pedal force. If the brakes are wet, press firmly several times to dry them out quickly.
- If the vehicle is stationary in deep water for an extended time, water may have entered the engine, transmission,

differentials and wheel bearings. Contact a Holden Dealer as soon as possible.

Hill and Mountain Roads

If the vehicle is driven frequently over hilly terrain, it must be maintained in good condition. The fluids, tyres and brake pads must be checked according to the maintenance schedule shown in the Service/Warranty Booklet.

On a downhill road, avoid unnecessary use of the brakes. The vehicle speed can be slowed by shifting down a gear.

When driving downhill, always keep the engine running and a gear engaged. Do not drive with the engine turned off or by shifting into neutral gear.

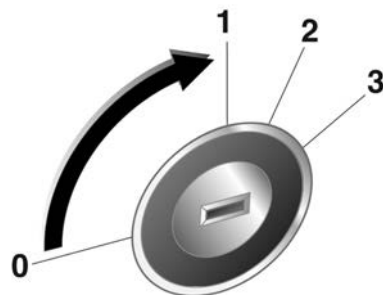
Starting and Operating

New Vehicle Break-In

Use the following precautions to improve performance:

- Do not make full throttle starts.
- Avoid downshifting to brake or slow the vehicle.
- Avoid hard stops except in emergencies. This will allow your brakes to bed in properly.
- Avoid hard stops except in emergencies to avoid premature wear and the need for early replacement of brakes.
- Avoid heavy acceleration and prolonged high-speed driving to avoid damage to the engine and to conserve fuel.
- Do not tow any other vehicle.

Ignition Positions



0 : Ignition off (LOCK)

1 : Ignition off (ACC), steering wheel lock released

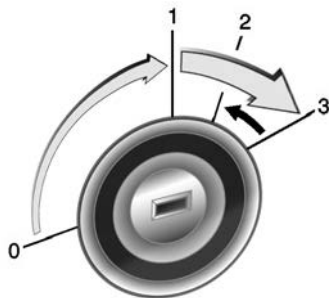
2 : Ignition on (ON), for diesel engine: preheating

3 : Starting (START)

⚠ Danger

Do not leave the key in position 1 or 2 for extended periods while the engine is not running. This will discharge the battery.

Do not turn the key to position 0 while driving. Driver could lose control of vehicle and brake power assistance would be cancelled, causing vehicle damage and risks of accident.

Starting the Engine

1. Apply the park brake.

2. Turn the key to position 1 while moving the steering wheel slightly to release the lock.

Manual transmission: Push the clutch pedal to the floor and move the selector lever to the neutral position.

Automatic transmission: Move the selector lever to **P** or **N**.

Do not accelerate.

3. Turn the ignition key to position 2 until the engine extinguishes.
4. Turn the key to position 3 and release when the engine is running.

Retained Accessory Power (RAP)

The power outlets may be used after the engine is turned off.

Note

The power outlets will continue to operate for up to 10 minutes or until a door is opened.

See *Power Outlets* ⇨ 65.

Starting the Diesel Engine

Observe the following precautions to ensure maximum turbocharger service life.

- After starting the engine, let it idle for approximately 1 to 2 minutes (avoid acceleration or driving the vehicle).
- Do not stop the engine immediately after high-load driving (such as high-speed driving or driving up steep gradients). Let the engine idle for approximately 1 to 2 minutes to cool it down.
- After changing the engine oil and oil filter, start the engine and let it idle for about 1 to 2 minutes (avoid acceleration or driving the vehicle).
- Operate the engine above idle speed only after normal engine oil pressure has been established. Forcing the turbocharger to operate before

the bearings are adequately lubricated creates unnecessary friction.

- Use only the specified engine oil and observe the inspection and replacement intervals.
- At low outside temperatures or when the vehicle has not been used for a long period, normal engine oil pressure and flow is affected.
- Under these conditions, the engine should be started and allowed to idle for a few minutes before operating at higher rpms.

Parking

1. Apply the parking brake firmly without engaging the release button.

2. Automatic transmission: Select position **P**.

Manual transmission: If facing uphill or on flat ground, select 1st gear. If facing downhill, select reverse gear.

On an uphill gradient turn the front wheels away from the kerb.

On a downhill gradient turn the front wheels towards the kerb.

3. Shut all windows.
4. Turn the ignition off to lock the steering wheel.
5. Remove the key.
6. Press  on the key to lock all doors. See *Keys* ⇨ 17.



Warning

To avoid the possibility of injury, always apply the parking brake firmly before exiting the vehicle.

Be careful where you park or drive. As with any vehicle, do not park or operate this vehicle in areas where combustible materials such as dry grass or leaves can come in contact with the hot exhaust system.

Never leave the engine running in an area such as a closed garage or underground car park.

Engine Exhaust



Engine exhaust gases contain poisonous carbon monoxide, which is colourless and odourless and could be fatal if inhaled.

If exhaust gases enter the interior of the vehicle, open the windows. Have the cause of the fault repaired by a Holden Dealer.

Diesel Particulate Filter

The vehicle has a Diesel Particulate Filter (DPF) as part of the exhaust system to reduce vehicle emissions.

The diesel particulate filter system collects particulates from the exhaust gases to minimise discharge of soot to the atmosphere.

To prevent clogging of the filter, the soot particles are burnt off at regular intervals through a self cleaning process where additional fuel is injected into the engine cylinders to increase the particulate filter temperature to approximately 600°C.

Several factors including fuel consumed, hours of engine operation, and distance travelled are monitored by the Engine Control Module (ECM). The self-cleaning occurs approximately once per tank of fuel.

This allows deposited soot to be oxidised or burnt off and converted to carbon dioxide (CO₂).

This process usually takes between 10 and 15 minutes but may take up to 30 minutes depending on driving conditions.

Increased engine speed at idle and emissions of odours and smoke are considered to be normal conditions during the self cleaning process. Fuel consumption may also be higher during this period.

Under certain driving conditions, such as stop-start traffic, the filter cannot clean itself. A message is displayed when the DPF is dirty and needs to perform a self cleaning. See *Diesel Particulate Filter Messages* ⇨ 78.

For the filter to clean itself, the vehicle must be continuously driven until the message extinguishes. This can take up to 30 minutes.

The message extinguishes as soon as the self-cleaning operation is complete. Turning the engine off while the message is displayed will

prevent the cleaning process from completing. This will result in increased fuel consumption and a reduction in engine oil life.

You will also notice a change in the exhaust sound and engine idle speed. This is normal.

If you continue to drive with the DPF warning message displayed and the exhaust filter is not cleaned as required, the SVS (Service Vehicle Soon) message will be displayed, since the self-cleaning process is not feasible and a dealer service is necessary.

If the diesel particulate filter is not cleaned soon, the MIL (Malfunction Indicator Lamp) will illuminate, an 'Engine Power is Reduced' message will be displayed and a dealer service will be necessary. See *Diesel Particulate Filter Messages* ⇨ 78, *Vehicle Messages* ⇨ 76, *Engine Power Messages* ⇨ 78, *Malfunction Indicator Lamp* ⇨ 70.

Caution

Permanent damage can occur to the DPF or related components if the required Ultra Low Sulfur Diesel (15 ppm sulfur maximum) or the recommended engine oil is not used. This damage would not be covered by the vehicle warranty.

 Warning

During DPF self cleaning or during extended idling, the exhaust system and exhaust gases are very hot. Combustible material could contact hot exhaust components under the vehicle and ignite. You or others could be burnt. Do not park or idle for an extended period of time near or over paper, leaves, dry grass, or other combustible materials. Keep the exhaust area clear of material that could ignite or burn.

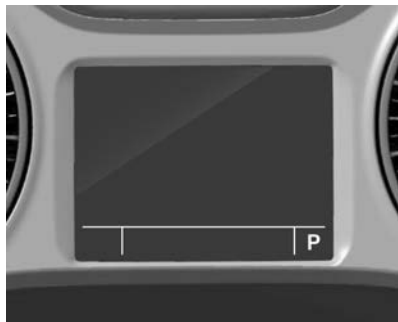
Caution

Extended idle should be avoided as the DPF system will not self clean. During extended idle operation, monitor the DIC for messages and take appropriate action. Continued idling with the warning message displayed may cause irreversible damage to the DPF.

Automatic Transmission

The automatic transmission permits manual gear shifting (manual mode) or automatic gear shifting (automatic mode) of the gears.

Transmission Display



The mode or selected gear is shown in the central display of the instrument panel.

Shift Lever



P: (park) In park position, the wheels are locked. Select **P** only when the vehicle is stationary and the parking brake is applied.

R: (reverse) Place in reverse only when the vehicle is stationary.

N: (neutral)

D: (drive) Used for general driving. Allows the transmission to be shifted into any of the six forward gears.

+/-: (manual) See *Manual Mode* ⇨ 190.

Note

- The selector lever is locked in position **P**. To move, switch the ignition on, apply the brake pedal and push the release button.
- To engage **P** or **R**, push the release button.
- To start the engine, press the brake pedal while in either **P** or **N**.
- Do not accelerate while engaging a gear.
- Never press the accelerator pedal and brake pedal at the same time.
- When a gear is engaged, the vehicle slowly begins to creep when the brake is released.

Engine Braking

For engine braking, select a lower gear when driving downhill.

⚠ Warning

Do not shift down by two or more gear positions at one time.

Grade Braking

Grade braking assists in maintaining desired vehicle speeds when driving on downhill gradients by using the engine and transmission to slow the vehicle.

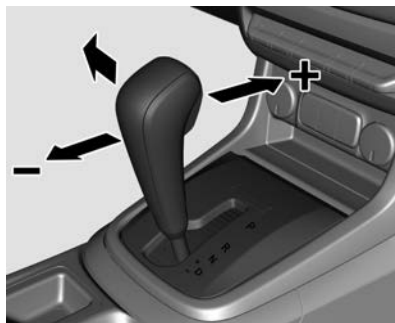
The first time the feature activates for each ignition cycle, a DIC message will be displayed. See *Transmission Messages* ⇨ 81.

Parking

1. Press the brake pedal.
2. Select position **P**.
3. Apply the parking brake firmly without engaging the release button.
4. Remove the ignition key.

Note

The ignition key can only be removed when the selector lever is in position **P**.

Manual Mode

Move the selector lever out of position **D** towards the left and then forwards or backwards as desired.

+ : Upshift

- : Downshift

If a higher gear is selected when the vehicle speed is too low or a lower gear when vehicle speed is too high, the shift is not executed.

If the engine speed is too low, the transmission automatically shifts to a lower gear.

No automatic shifting to a higher gear takes place at high engine speed.

Electronic Driving Programs**Kickdown**

If the accelerator pedal is pressed to the floor while in automatic mode, the transmission shifts to a lower gear, depending on the engine speed.

Fault

In the event of a fault,  illuminates. The transmission no longer shifts automatically or manually because it is locked in a certain gear.

Contact a Holden Dealer.

Interruption of Power Supply

If the power supply is interrupted, the selector lever cannot be moved out of position **P** and the ignition key cannot be removed.

If the battery is discharged, start the vehicle using jump leads. See *Jump Starting* ⇨ 255.

If the battery is not the cause of the fault, release the selector lever and remove the ignition key from the ignition switch/lock.

Release Selector Lever

To shift out of **P**:

1. Apply the brake pedal.



2. Open the cover.

Note

Use a small screwdriver to prise the cover off at both ends.



3. Insert a screwdriver into the slot until the selector lever is unlocked.
4. Move the selector lever to position **N**.
5. Remove the screwdriver.
6. Close the cover.
7. Have the vehicle repaired by a Holden Dealer as soon as possible.

Manual Transmission



- To engage reverse gear, press the selector lever and move towards the right side and rearwards.
- Do not engage reverse gear while the vehicle is moving.
- If the gear does not engage, move the selector lever to neutral, release the clutch pedal, press the clutch pedal again then repeat gear selection.

- Ensure the clutch pedal is pushed all the way to the floor.
- Do not use the pedal as a foot rest.

Caution

Do not drive with your hand resting on the selector lever.

Drive Systems

Four-Wheel Drive

If the vehicle has four-wheel drive, you can send the engine driving power to all four wheels for extra traction.

To get the best performance out of four-wheel drive, you must be familiar with its operation. You should use two-wheel drive high for most normal driving conditions.

Note

Driving on clean, dry pavement in four-wheel drive for an extended period of time can cause premature wear on the vehicle drivetrain.

Note

Do not engage four-wheel drive if wheels of different sizes are fitted as damage to the vehicle can result. The repair would not be covered by the warranty.

Note

An incorrect usage of the four-wheel drive may damage the system. Use four-wheel drive only on tracks with

low adherence, dirt roads, grass, pasture, mud, sand, whenever additional traction is required.

The transfer case shift control switch is located to the side of the parking brake handle on the console between the front seats.

Indicator lights on the shift control switch indicate which setting you are in. The indicator lights will come on briefly when you turn on the ignition and the selected setting will remain on. If the lights do not come on, you should take the vehicle in for service. An indicator light will flash while shifting. It will stay on when the shift is completed. If the transfer case does not shift, it will return to the last chosen setting.

When the ignition key is in the position **2**, the transfer case shift control module monitors the transfer case shift control switch to determine if the driver desires a new setting. At a turn of the transfer case shift control switch, the lamp of the new desired setting will begin to flash to inform the driver that the transfer case shift control module

has received the request for a new setting. The lamp continues to flash until all shifting criteria has been met and the new setting has been reached or has been engaged. Once the new setting is fully active, the switch indicator lamp for the new setting will remain on constantly.



Rotate the shift control switch to shift into and out of four-wheel drive. You can choose from the following:

2↑ (Two-Wheel High) : This setting is for driving in most street and highway situations. The front axle is not engaged in two-wheel drive.

N (Neutral) : Shift the vehicle transfer case to N (Neutral) only when towing the vehicle.

Warning

Shifting the transfer case to N (Neutral) can cause the vehicle to roll even if the transmission is in P (Park). You or someone else could be seriously injured. Be sure to set the parking brake before placing the transfer case in N (Neutral). See *Parking* ⇨ 186

4↑ (Four-Wheel High) : This setting engages the front axle to help drive the vehicle. Use four-wheel high when you need extra traction, such as on snowy or icy roads, or in most off road situations.

4↓ (Four-Wheel Low) : This setting also engages the front axle to give you extra traction. It sends the maximum power to all four wheels.

You might choose four-wheel low if you were driving off-road in sand, mud, or deep snow and while climbing or descending steep hills. Shifting into four-wheel low will turn off engine traction control and stability control, see *Traction Control System (TCS)* ⇨ 198.

Note

Continuous driving on 4↑ or 4↓ on high adherence tracks (dry compacted dirt or paved roads), mainly on turns or sudden manoeuvres, is not recommended, as it will cause premature wear of drivetrain components as well increasing fuel consumption. It is always recommended to disable 4↑ or 4↓ after its intended usage.

Shifting from Two-Wheel High to Four-Wheel High (2↑ to 4↑)

Rotate the shift control switch from two-wheel high 2↑ to the four-wheel high 4↑ setting. This can be done at any speed below 120 km/h.

Shifting from Four-Wheel High to Two-Wheel High (4↑ to 2↑)

Rotate the shift control switch to the two-wheel high 2↑ position. This can be done at any speed. It is normal to hear and feel the vehicle transfer case shift out of four-wheel high 4↑.

Shifting from Two-Wheel High or Four-Wheel High to Four-Wheel Low (2↑ or 4↑ to 4↓)

To shift from Two-Wheel High 2↑ or four-wheel high 4↑ to four-wheel low 4↓, the vehicle must be stopped or moving less than 5 km/h with the transmission in N (Neutral) for an automatic transmission or the clutch pedal pressed for a manual transmission. The preferred method for shifting into four-wheel low 4↓ is to have your vehicle moving 1.6 to 3.2 km/h. Rotate the shift control switch to the four-wheel low 4↓ setting. You must wait for the four-wheel low 4↓ indicator light to stop flashing and stay on before

shifting the transmission into gear or releasing the clutch pedal.

If four-wheel low setting is selected when the vehicle is in gear and/or moving faster than 5 km/h, the four-wheel low indicator light will flash for 30 seconds but will not complete the shift and the light will go back to the original setting.

Shifting from Four-Wheel Low to Two-Wheel High or Four-Wheel High (4↓ to 2↑ or 4↑)

To shift from four-wheel low 4↓ to two-wheel high 2↑ or four-wheel high 4↑, the vehicle must be stopped or moving less than 5 km/h with the transmission in N (Neutral) for an automatic transmission or the clutch pedal pressed for a manual transmission. The preferred method for shifting out of four-wheel low 4↓ is to have your vehicle moving 1.6 to 3.2 km/h. Rotate the shift control switch to the two-wheel high 2↑ or four-wheel high 4↑ position. You must wait for the two-wheel high or four-wheel high indicator light to

stop flashing and stay on before shifting the transmission into gear or releasing the clutch pedal.

If two-wheel high or four-wheel high setting is selected when the vehicle is in gear and/or moving faster than 5 km/h, the two-wheel high or four-wheel high indicator light will flash for 30 seconds but will not complete the shift and the light will go back to the original setting.

Shifting to Neutral (2↑, 4↑ or 4↓ to Neutral)

Use N (Neutral) when you plan to tow the vehicle. See *Towing the Vehicle* ⇨ 258 for towing instructions. The vehicle must be stopped. To shift the transfer case into N (Neutral) with the key on position **ON**, do the following:

1. Set the parking brake.
2. Start the vehicle.
3. Press the brake pedal and shift the transmission in N (Neutral), or press the clutch for vehicles with a manual transmission.

4. Shift the transfer case to two-wheel high **2 ↑**.
5. Rotate the shift control switch clockwise past four-wheel low **4 ↓** to **N (Neutral)**. Hold the switch in the **N (Neutral)** setting for at least 20 seconds or wait until the red Neutral indicator light stops flashing and stays on. The **N (Neutral)** red indicator light will come on when the transfer case shift to **N (Neutral)** is complete.

Note

Upon releasing the shift control switch from **NEUTRAL (N)** setting, the switch will rotate to the four-wheel low (**4 ↓**) setting. The transfer case will remain in **NEUTRAL** with **RED NEUTRAL (N)** indicator light illuminated until a new setting is selected.

6. Press and hold the brake pedal and shift the transmission to **R (Reverse)** for 1 second, then

shift the transmission to **D (Drive)** for 1 second, or **1 (First)** for vehicles with manual transmissions and let out the clutch to insure the transfer case is in **N (Neutral)**. If the transfer case is not in **N (Neutral)**, repeat this procedure starting at Step 3.

7. Turn the engine off by turning the key to **ACC/ACCESSORY**.
8. Place the transmission selector lever in **P (Park)**, or **1 (First)** for vehicles that have a manual transmission.
9. Turn the ignition to **LOCK/OFF**.

This **N (Neutral)** setting is a four-wheel drive neutral, meaning the front and rear outputs of the transfer case are disengaged. With a disengaged transfer, there is no power flow the either axle, thus allowing towing without the driveline binding.

Shifting Out of Neutral

After towing the vehicle, you will have to shift out of **N (Neutral)** in order to drive. To shift out of **N (Neutral)**, do the following:

1. Apply the parking brake.
2. Start the vehicle or keep the engine off and turn the key to the **ON (2)** position.
3. Apply the brake pedal and shift the transmission to **N (Neutral)** position or, for vehicles with a manual transmission press the clutch pedal.
4. Rotate the transfer case shift control switch from the four-wheel low **4 ↓** setting to the desired setting.

Brakes

The brake system comprises two independent brake circuits.

If one brake circuit fails, the vehicle can still brake using the other brake circuit. However, the braking effect is achieved only when the brake pedal is pressed firmly.

Considerably more force is needed for this. The braking distance is extended. Contact a Holden Dealer.

When the engine is not running, such as when the vehicle is being towed and the brake pedal has been depressed once or twice, braking requires greater force.

Caution

Do not drive with your foot resting on the brake pedal. This will accelerate wear of the brake components and cause the brakes to become overheated.

Antilock Brake System (ABS)

ABS:

- Continuously monitors the vehicle's braking system, preventing the wheels from locking.
- Allows maximum braking effort while full steering control is retained, even in the event of panic braking.

Warning

Do not let this special safety feature tempt you into taking risks when driving. Traffic safety can only be achieved by adopting a responsible driving style. You should always adjust the vehicle's speed to suit road and traffic conditions. Always maintain an adequate distance to the vehicle in front of you.

Operation

ABS operation is noticeable by pulsing of the brake pedal and the noise of the regulation process.

The initial self-check may also be audible.

Keep the brake pedal fully pressed throughout the braking process, without pumping it. Pumping the brake pedal can reduce brake efficiency.

If the vehicle is travelling above 50 km/h and ABS braking occurs, the centrally mounted rear high-level brake lamp will flash.

Warning

When the ignition is turned on, the  warning light briefly illuminates. The self-check of the ABS may be audible.

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

If the  warning light (ABS off) on the instrument panel display does not extinguish, or illuminates when driving, a malfunction has occurred.

Note: The vehicle's brake system remains operational, but without ABS assistance. Have a Holden Dealer check the system as soon as possible.

See *Brake and Clutch System Warning Light* ⇨ 70.

Parking Brake

Applying the parking brake:

1. Apply the parking brake firmly without engaging the release button and apply as firmly as possible when on an uphill or downhill gradient.

Releasing the parking brake:

1. Pull the lever slightly upwards.
2. Press the release button and lower the lever all the way down.

To reduce the operating forces of the parking brake, press the foot brake at the same time.

 Warning

Never drive the vehicle with the parking brake applied.

See *Brake and Clutch System Warning Light* ⇨ 70.

Brake Assist

If the brake pedal is pressed quickly and forcefully, maximum brake force is automatically applied (full braking).

Maintain steady pressure on the brake pedal for as long as full braking is required. Maximum brake force is automatically reduced when the brake pedal is released.

Hill Start Assist (HSA)

The HSA system assists in preventing rollback when driving off, while on an incline.

1. Release the brake pedal.
2. Press the accelerator pedal.

The brakes remain on for approximately 2 seconds.

Ride Control Systems

Traction Control System (TCS)

TCS improves driving stability when necessary, regardless of the type of road surface or tyre grip, by preventing the driving wheels from spinning.

As soon as the driving wheels start to spin, engine output is reduced and the wheels are braked individually. This considerably improves the driving stability of the vehicle on slippery road surfaces.

When four-wheel drive is active, TCS is operational on the rear wheels only.

Warning

Do not let this special safety feature tempt you into taking risks when driving. Traffic safety can only be achieved by adopting a responsible driving style. The

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

vehicle's speed should always be adjusted to suit road and traffic conditions. Always maintain an adequate distance to the vehicle in front of you.

Operation

The  switch is located in front of the selector lever.



In certain circumstances, it may be helpful to deactivate the TCS.

- Deactivate by pressing  for approximately 2 seconds. Traction Control Off is displayed on the DIC.
- TCS is reactivated by pressing  again, for approximately 2 seconds. Traction Control On is displayed on the DIC.
- When active  flashes.
- TCS is also reactivated the next time the ignition is turned on.
- See *Ride Control System Messages* ⇨ 79.

Electronic Stability Control (ESC)

ESC:

- Improves driving stability in any driving situation.
- Assists in maintaining vehicle stability when the vehicle's grip level is exceeded such as a sudden lane change, slippery or unexpected road conditions.

- Alters engine power and/or braking on specific wheels, improving the vehicle's steering control and power delivery, on wet or slippery roads, particularly on snow and ice.

Warning

Do not let this special safety feature tempt you into taking risks when driving. Adapt speed to the road conditions.

Operation

The  switch is located in front of the selector lever.



In certain circumstances, it may be helpful to deactivate ESC.

- Deactivate by pressing  for approximately 7 seconds.
 illuminates and ESC Off is displayed on the DIC.
- ESC is reactivated by pressing  again for approximately 2 seconds.
Both TCS and ESC are reactivated and  extinguishes.
- When active  illuminates.
- ESC is also reactivated the next time the ignition is turned on.

- See *Ride Control System Messages* ⇨ 79.

Descent Control System (DCS)

- The DCS allows the vehicle to travel on a steep decline at speeds between approximately 7 km/h and 30 km/h (manual transmission) or 4 km/h and 30 km/h (automatic transmission) without pressing the brake pedal.
- When the system is activated and while the vehicle is moving at speeds between approximately 7 km/h and 30 km/h (manual transmission) or 4 km/h and 30 km/h (automatic transmission), it will maintain the desired descent speed when the vehicle is on a steep slope.
- The desired descent speed within the active range can be varied by using the accelerator or brake pedals to set the speed.

- Noise or vibration from the brake system may be noticeable when the system is in operation.

Caution

Use only when descending steep gradients while driving off-road. Do not use when driving on normal road surfaces. Unnecessary usage of the DCS, such as while driving on normal roads, may damage the brake system and the ESC function.

Activation



While travelling at speeds below 50 km/h:

- Press .

 illuminates green on the instrument panel.

During operation,  flashes.

Note

- Pressing the accelerator or brake pedals while DCS is activated, will adjust the desired descent speed.

If pressed, DCS operation will stop until the accelerator or brake pedals are released.

 stops flashing.

- If the DCS is activated and the vehicle speed exceeds 30 km/h,  extinguishes and the system remains in standby mode.

When the vehicle speed drops below approximately 30 km/h,  illuminates and DCS is activated.

- When in standby mode and the vehicle speed exceeds 50 km/h, DCS deactivates.
- The message Reduce Speed for Hill Descent Control may display when DCS is activated and vehicle speed exceeds 30 km/h.

Deactivation

While travelling at speeds below 50 km/h:

- Press .

 extinguishes.

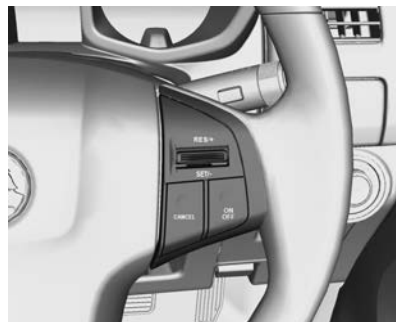
System Protection

When operated continuously for prolonged periods of time, temperatures may increase within the brake system:

- DCS may enter a protection mode, gradually releasing the brakes, and temporarily disabling DCS.
-  will extinguish.
- Traction Control Off may display on the DIC.
- All other braking functions will continue to operate normally.
- Once the brakes are at normal temperatures, press  at speeds below 50 km/h to reactivate the DCS.

Cruise Control

The vehicle may have cruise control.



The cruise control:

- Maintains the vehicle's speed without pressure on the accelerator pedal.
- Will only operate at speeds above approximately 20 km/h.
- Controls are located on the steering wheel.

- For safety reasons, cruise control cannot be activated until the foot brake has been operated once.

Warning

Do not use the cruise control when road or driving conditions require varying speeds. A consistent speed isn't practical in heavy, varying traffic or on winding, slippery or rough roads.

The cruise control does not apply the vehicle's brakes. Therefore the vehicle may gain speed when going down steep hills.

When climbing steep hills, the vehicle may lose speed. You may need to switch off cruise control and use the accelerator pedal.

Setting Cruise Control

1. Press **ON OFF**.

 illuminates white.

2. Accelerate to the desired speed (above 20 km/h).

3. Push the switch down to **SET/-**.

 illuminates green.

4. Take your foot off the accelerator pedal.

Increasing Set Speed

- Push the switch up to **RES/+** and hold it or briefly push to **RES/+** repeatedly.

The vehicle will accelerate.

- Alternatively accelerate to the desired speed and store by pushing the switch down to **SET/-**.

Note

Vehicle speed can be increased by depressing the accelerator pedal. When the accelerator pedal is released, the previously stored speed is resumed.

Note

The cruise control will remain activated while shifting gears with manual transmission.

Decreasing Set Speed

1. Push the switch down to **SET/-** and hold it or briefly push to **SET/-** repeatedly.

The vehicle will decelerate.

2. Release the switch at the desired speed.

Deactivation

- Press **CANCEL**.

 illuminates white.

Alternatively, do one of the following:

- Reduce vehicle speed below approximately 20 km/h.
- Press the brake pedal.
- Press the clutch pedal for more than a few seconds (manual transmission).
- The TCS or the ESC operates.

Resume Stored Speed

When the cruise control is on and speed is above 20 km/h:

- Push the lever up to **RES/+**.
The most recently set speed will automatically resume.

 illuminates green.

Switching Off

- Press **ON OFF**.

 extinguishes.

The stored speed is deleted.

Note

Switching the ignition off also deletes the stored speed.

Object Detection Systems

Forward Collision Alert (FCA) System

If equipped, the FCA system may help to avoid or reduce the harm caused by front-end crashes. When approaching a vehicle ahead too quickly, FCA provides a red flashing alert and rapidly beeps. FCA also lights a yellow visual alert if following another vehicle much too closely.

FCA detects vehicles within a distance of approximately 60 m and operates at speeds above 40 km/h.

Warning

FCA is a warning system and does not apply the brakes. When approaching a slower-moving or stopped vehicle ahead too rapidly, or when following a vehicle too closely, FCA may not provide a

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

warning with enough time to help avoid a crash. It also may not provide any warning at all. FCA does not warn of pedestrians, animals, signs, guardrails, bridges, construction barrels, or other objects. Be ready to take action and apply the brakes.

FCA can be disabled with the FCA steering wheel control.

Detecting the Vehicle Ahead



FCA warnings will not occur unless the FCA system detects a vehicle ahead. When a vehicle is detected, the vehicle ahead indicator will display green.

Note

Vehicles may not be detected on curves, highway exit ramps, or hills, due to poor visibility; or if a vehicle ahead is partially blocked by pedestrians or other objects. FCA will not detect another vehicle ahead until it is completely in the driving lane.

Warning

FCA does not provide a warning to help avoid a crash, unless it detects a vehicle. FCA may not detect a vehicle ahead if the FCA sensor is blocked by dirt, snow, or ice, or if the windscreen is damaged. It may also not detect a vehicle on winding or hilly roads, or in conditions that can limit visibility such as fog, rain, or snow, or if the headlamps or windscreen are not cleaned or in proper condition. Keep the windscreen, headlamps, and FCA sensors clean and in good repair.

Warning

Poor illumination conditions will prejudice the camera identification of vehicles ahead.

Motorcycles may not be detected by the camera when it is dark enough outside.

Collision Alert

Cluster Alert



Reflected LED Alert



When your vehicle approaches another detected vehicle too rapidly, the red FCA display will flash and sound several high-pitched beeps from the front. When this Collision Alert occurs, the brake system may prepare for driver braking to occur more rapidly which can cause a brief, mild deceleration. Continue to apply the brake pedal as needed. Cruise control may be disengaged when the Collision Alert occurs.

Press  on the steering wheel to adjust the alert sensitivity. Each press cycles the alert sensitivity through three settings: Far, Medium, Near or Off.

When pressed, the current alert sensitivity setting displays briefly on the instrument cluster. The alert sensitivity setting will be maintained until it is changed.

Note

Consider traffic and weather conditions when selecting the following alert sensitivity. The range of selectable alert sensitivity may not be appropriate for all drivers and driving conditions.

Tailgating Alert

The yellow Collision Alert display will stay continuously illuminated when following a detected vehicle ahead much too closely.

Selecting the Alert Timing

The Collision Alert control is on the steering wheel. Press  to set the FCA timing to far, medium, near,

or off. The first button press shows the current control setting on the DIC. Additional button presses will change this setting. The chosen setting will remain until it is changed and will affect both the Collision Alert and the Tailgating Alert features. The timing of both alerts will vary based on vehicle speed. The faster the vehicle speed, the farther away the alert will occur. Consider traffic and weather conditions when selecting the alert timing. The range of selectable alert timing may not be appropriate for all drivers and driving conditions.

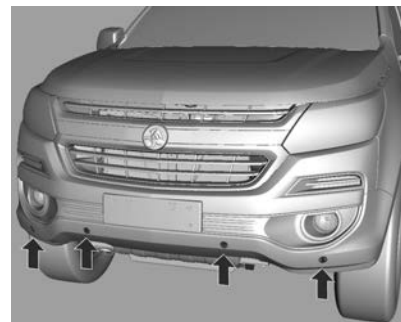
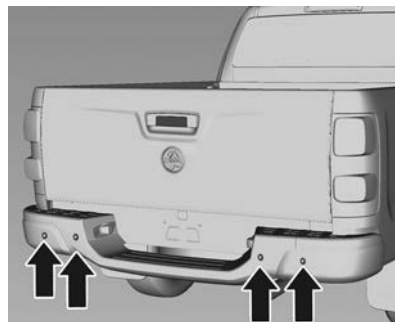
Unnecessary Alerts

FCA may provide unnecessary alerts for turning vehicles, vehicles in other lanes, objects that are not vehicles, or shadows. These alerts are normal operation and the vehicle does not need service.

Cleaning the System

If the FCA system does not seem to operate properly, cleaning the outside of the windshield in front of the rearview mirror may correct the issue.

Parking Assist

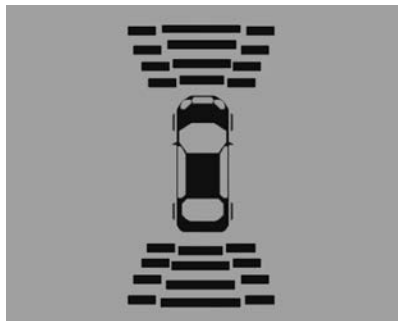


Warning

The parking assist makes parking easier by measuring the distance between the vehicle and the obstacles and giving acoustic signals. It is the driver, however, who bears full responsibility for the parking manoeuvre.

With Rear Parking Assist (RPA), and if equipped with Front Parking Assist (FPA), as the vehicle moves at speeds of less than 11 km/h the sensors on the bumpers may detect objects up to 2.3 m behind and 1.0 m in front of the vehicle within a

zone 25 cm high off the ground and below bumper level. These detection distances may be shorter during warmer or humid weather. Blocked sensors will not detect objects and can also cause false detections. Keep the sensors clean of mud, dirt, snow, ice, and slush; and clean sensors after a car wash in freezing temperatures. Beeps for FPA are higher pitched than for RPA.



The instrument cluster may have a parking assist display with bars that show “distance to object” and object

location information for the Parking Assist system. As the object gets closer, more bars light up.

For vehicles with rear vision camera, the information display will show the symbol . As the object gets closer, the symbol will get bigger and its color changes from yellow to red.

The system consists of four ultrasonic parking sensors in the rear bumper and four ultrasonic parking sensors in the front bumper (if equipped).

Warning

The Parking Assist system does not detect children, pedestrians, bicyclists, animals, or objects located below the bumper or that are too close or too far from the vehicle. It is not available at speeds greater than 11 km/h. To prevent injury, death, or vehicle damage, even with parking assist,

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

always check the area around the vehicle and check all mirrors before moving forward or backing.

Note

Attached parts in the detection area cause system malfunction.

Warning

Under certain circumstances, various reflective surfaces on objects or clothing as well as external noise sources may cause the system to fail to detect obstacles.

Caution

Sensitivity of the sensor could be reduced caused by external influences, e.g. layers on the
(Continued)

Caution (Continued)

sensor surface (ice, snow, mud, soiling, multiple varnishing/painting, etc.).

The sensor could detect a non-existing object (echo disturbance) caused by either external acoustical disturbances, such as another park assist system, or external mechanic disturbances such as a car wash, rain, extreme wind conditions, hail, etc.

Performance of the parking assist system could be reduced due to the change of the sensor position by external changes to the vehicle, e.g. lowering of the shock absorber over lifetime due to: temperature changes, changing of tyres, loading of the vehicle, lowering/tuning of the vehicle etc.

Particular conditions apply for high vehicles (e.g. off-road vehicles, mini vans, transporters).

(Continued)

Caution (Continued)

Object identification in the upper part of the vehicle can not be guaranteed.

Activation

When reverse gear is engaged, the front and rear systems are activated automatically.

An obstacle is indicated by acoustic warnings. The interval between the warnings becomes shorter as the vehicle gets closer to the obstacle. When the distance is less than 30 cm, the acoustic warning sounds continuously.

Note

The acoustic warning ceases if the vehicle remains stationary for 3 seconds or more (except in continuous sound)

Deactivation

The system is deactivated automatically when:

- The vehicle is driven above 11 km/h — front and rear parking assist is deactivated.
- The reverse gear is disengaged — rear parking assist is deactivated.
- A fault in the system occurs.

Note

The front parking assist will automatically reactivate until vehicle speed exceeds 25 km/h.

The system can be manually turned off by pressing the **P** button of the instrument panel while Parking Assist is on.

Pressing the **P** button while Parking Assist is off will allow the system to turn on when activation parameters are met.

Fault

To test a possible fault:

1. Park the vehicle on an area with no obstacles in a range of 2 meters of the rear bumper.
2. Apply the parking brake firmly.
3. Turn the ignition key to **ON**.
4. Engage reverse.
5. When the reverse gear is engaged:
 - If there is no acoustic signal: Check the power supply of the kit module, by verifying that the reverse lights are working.
 - If just one acoustic signal is given followed shortly after by an almost continuous acoustic signal, it indicates a fault sign: Seek the assistance of a Holden dealer.
 - If one acoustic signal is given followed by separate acoustic signals like when

the vehicle gets closer to an object: Seek the assistance of a Holden dealer.

- If two acoustic signals are given:

Seek the assistance of a Holden dealer.

Turning the Features On or Off

The **PWA** button of the instrument panel is used to turn on or off the Front and Rear Parking Assist. The indicator LED next to the button comes on when the features are on and turns off when the features have been disabled.

Turn off parking assist when towing a trailer.

Rear Vision Camera (RVC)

The vehicle may have a RVC.

Warning

Never rely solely on the rear vision camera when reversing the vehicle.

There is a blind spot that can not be sensed by the rear vision camera.

The rear vision camera is not intended to replace the driver's judgement or attention to the rear of the vehicle when reversing.

Before entering the vehicle, always check that the area around the vehicle is clear of obstacles and people.

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

Always perform head checks and use the vehicle's mirrors when reversing.

If the vehicle sustains any damage in the area of the rear vision camera, the camera may become misaligned. Contact a Holden Dealer.

Always keep the camera lens free from dirt, snow or ice. Only use mild soap and water with a soft cloth to clean the lens.

Camera Location

The camera is located on the rear tailgate.

The RVC cannot display objects:

- Close to the corners of the bumper
- Forward of the camera
- Higher than the camera

RVC Display

The camera image appears on the infotainment system display when reverse gear is selected.

The area directly behind the vehicle is displayed in real time.

Note

- The distance of objects seen on the screen differs from the actual distance.
- The area displayed on the screen may vary according to vehicle orientation or road conditions.
- Objects of different heights will appear to be different distances from the vehicle.
- The display brightness automatically adjusts to suit ambient lighting conditions.
- Guidelines to assist reversing can be displayed. See "Infotainment System" for more information.

Operating the RVC

To activate:

1. Turn the ignition key to **ON**.
2. Select reverse gear.

The camera and display automatically activates.

Note

When the selector lever is moved to another position, the RVC deactivates.

Cleaning

The lens requires regular cleaning to ensure optimum performance.

Use only a soft cloth, mild soap and water.

 Warning

Do not use abrasive cleaners or scouring pads as they could scratch the lens, impairing the systems performance.

Lane Departure Warning (LDW)

If equipped, LDW may help avoid crashes due to unintentional lane departures. It may provide an alert if the vehicle is crossing a lane without using a turn signal in that direction. LDW uses a camera to detect the lane markings at speeds of 60 km/h or greater.

 Warning

The LDW system does not steer the vehicle. The LDW system may not:

- Provide enough time to avoid a crash.
- Detect lane markings under poor weather or visibility conditions. This can occur if the windshield or headlamps are blocked by dirt, snow, or ice; if they are not in proper condition; or if the sun shines directly into the camera.
- Detect road edges.
- Detect lanes on winding or hilly roads.

If LDW only detects lane markings on one side of the road, it will only warn you when departing the lane on the side where it has detected a lane marking. Always keep your attention on the road and

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

maintain proper vehicle position within the lane, or vehicle damage, injury, or death could occur. Always keep the windshield, headlamps, and camera sensors clean and in good repair. Do not use LDW in bad weather conditions.

How the System Works

The LDW camera is on the windshield ahead of the rearview mirror.

To turn LDW on and off, press the  button on the instrument panel. The button indicator illuminates when LDW is on.



When LDW is on,  is green if LDW is available to warn of a lane departure. If the vehicle crosses a detected lane marking without using the turn signal in that direction,  changes to yellow and flashes. Additionally, there will be three beeps on the right or left, depending on the lane departure direction.

When the System Does Not Seem To Work Properly

The system may not detect lanes as well when there are:

- Close vehicles ahead.
- Sudden lighting changes, such as when driving through tunnels.
- Banked roads.

If the LDW system is not functioning properly when lane markings are clearly visible, cleaning the windshield may help.

LDW alerts may occur due to tar marks, shadows, cracks in the road, temporary or construction lane markings, or other road imperfections. This is normal system operation; the vehicle does not need service. Turn LDW off if these conditions continue.

Intelligent Alert Suppression

The system alerts may be suppressed in the following conditions:

- Braking (obstacle avoidance).
- Acceleration (passing another vehicle).
- Constant curves with great steering wheel interaction (driving downhill).
- Turn signal activated.

Fuel

Danger

EXHAUST WARNING – CARBON MONOXIDE POISONING

Exhaust gases can contain carbon monoxide, a dangerous gas, which can cause unconsciousness and even death to both humans and animals.

Gases could be inhaled if the exhaust system on your vehicle is faulty.

To protect against exhaust gases entering the vehicle, the exhaust system and body should be inspected:

- Each time the vehicle is serviced.
- Whenever a change is noticed in the sound of the exhaust system.

(Continued)

Danger (Continued)

- Whenever the exhaust system, underbody or rear of the vehicle is damaged.

Take the vehicle to a Holden Dealer if you think the vehicle needs inspecting for any of the above reasons.

Do not sit (or leave children or pets) in a parked vehicle for any extended period of time with the engine running. Turn the fan on using any setting that brings outside air into the vehicle. Do not run the engine in an enclosed area (such as the garage) any longer than is needed to move the vehicle.

Danger

Always switch off the engine and any mobile phones when refuelling.

Do not smoke or allow open flames or sparks near the vehicle when refuelling.

If fuel fumes are detected while driving, the cause should be identified and corrected without delay by a Holden Dealer.

Static electricity can ignite fuel vapour. Only use pumps, hoses and containers that are properly grounded when filling up with fuel.

To avoid injury to you and to others, read and follow all instructions at the petrol station pump.

⚠ Warning**USE OF FUEL CONTAINING ETHANOL**

Under no circumstances should you use diesel fuel containing ethanol.

Use of such fuels may result in engine malfunction, starting and operating difficulties and materials degradation.

These adverse effects could result in permanent damage to your vehicle and personal injury.

Fuel Types

Diesel engines must only be run using commercially available diesel fuel that meets the requirements of Euro standard EN590.

The use of biodiesel containing up to 5 % fatty acid methyl ester ("FAME") also known as "B5" is also permitted provided that the FAME meets Euro Standard EN14214, and the resultant B5 blend meets Euro Standard EN590.

Do not use marine diesel oils or heating oils.

The flow and filterability of diesel fuel are temperature-dependent. When temperatures are low, use diesel fuel with guaranteed winter properties.

Caution

Use only biodiesel blends containing up to a maximum of 5 % FAME that meets Euro standard EN590.

Purchasing fuel from a reputable fuel retailer may reduce the risk of purchasing fuel with more than 5 % FAME or fuel that has abnormal fuel properties.

The use of any other biodiesel that does not have the certification referred to above, or has a FAME content exceeding 5 %, may cause serious damage to your vehicle (including engine failure).

(Continued)

Caution (Continued)

Damage attributable to the use of non-certified biodiesel is not covered by your New Vehicle Voluntary Warranty. In no event will GM Holden be responsible or bear any liability for any damage or loss that may arise in connection with the use of any fuel that does not meet this specification.

Filling the Tank

Always fill the fuel tank at the intermediate or fast fill rate. Do not add any more fuel after the fuel filler first clicks off or fuel blows back. This allows room for the fuel to expand inside the tank.

Wipe off any overflowing fuel immediately from the vehicle. Replace the fuel cap and close the fuel opening then spray or splash with water.

Tank Capacity

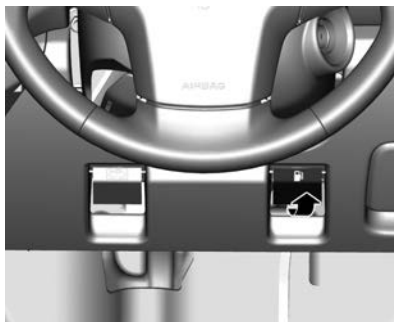
See *Capacities and Specifications* ⇨ 270.

Locking Fuel Cap (Cab Chassis)

The fuel filler is located at the rear of the vehicle on the left side.

1. To unlock, insert the key and rotate anticlockwise.
2. Slowly remove the cap.
3. After refuelling, replace the cap.
4. To lock, insert the key and rotate clockwise.

Fuel Filler Door (Pickup)



1. Pull the release lever.



The fuel filler door is located at the rear side of the vehicle, on the left.

2. Slowly remove the cap.
3. Place the fuel filler cap in the fuel filler door.
4. After refuelling, replace the cap.
5. Wipe off any overflowing fuel immediately.
6. Close the fuel filler door.

Caution

Before entering a car wash, ensure the fuel filler door is closed to avoid damage.

Trailer Towing

The word trailer is used throughout this section and includes all types of towed vehicles, such as caravans, boat trailers or any other special purpose trailer.

Maximum Towing Capacities (kg) – Braked Trailer

	2.8L Diesel
Maximum ball load (kg)	350
Maximum towing capacity	3,500
Gross Combined Mass (GCM)	6,000

Note

- Exceeding these values could affect the New Vehicle Voluntary Warranty.
- The maximum unbraked towing capacity for all vehicles is 750 kg.
- The GCM is a maximum total for the vehicle, payload and braked trailer combined.
- The maximum towing capacity requires the payload to be reduced to ensure the GCM is not exceeded. See Carrying Capacity under *Vehicle Weight* ⇨ 268.

Towing

Handling, durability and economy may be affected by towing a trailer.

For mandatory towing equipment, see Towing and Loading Equipment later in this section.

A Holden Dealer will assist with supply and installation of towing equipment.

Overloading

Never exceed the loads given for the towing equipment fitted to the vehicle.

All mandatory equipment must be fitted, otherwise you may affect the New Vehicle Voluntary Warranty, to the extent that Holden considers the overloading or missing equipment to have affected the specifications or quality of the vehicle. See Towing and Loading Equipment later in this section.

Warning

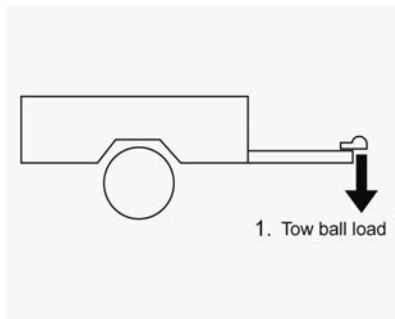
Holden towing equipment is recommended where it is available. Where it is not available, no recommendation is made as to the make of equipment which should be used.

(Continued)

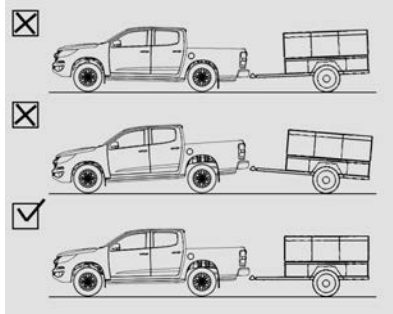
Warning (Continued)

Holden will not accept liability for defects occurring in towing equipment not marketed by Holden or for defects in the vehicle arising from the use of such equipment or for loss or injury caused by use of such equipment. The use of such equipment may void your New Vehicle Voluntary Warranty to the extent that Holden considers the non-recommended equipment affects the specifications or quality of your Holden vehicle.

It is inadvisable to mix and match different brands of towing equipment, as equipment is usually designed as an integrated package.

Trailer Recommendations

A trailer hitched to a vehicle places a weight on the tow bar. This weight is called the tow bar ball weight or tow ball load (1).



- For single-axle trailers, the tow ball load should be 10 % of the loaded trailer weight. For heavy trailers with more than one axle, the tow ball load should be 5 % - 10 % of the loaded trailer weight.

If the tow ball load is too light or too heavy, the steering and handling of the vehicle may be affected.

- Ensure the ball load does not exceed 10 % of the maximum loaded trailer weight. Refer to Towing and Loading Equipment later in this section.

- Adjust by moving items forwards or backwards within the trailer, to change the balance.
- Check the tow ball load before coupling the trailer to the towing vehicle.
- Axle loads must not be exceeded when the tow ball load is included. See Axle Loads under *Vehicle Weight* ⇨ 268.
- If maximum axle loads are exceeded, weight should be removed from the rear of the vehicle.
- If the load balance cannot be corrected, use a load distribution hitch (only for tow bars that support load distribution hitches).

Towing and Loading Equipment

Tow Load	Mandatory Equipment	Recommended Equipment
Up to 750 kg	Holden tow bar	Load distribution hitch.
	Holden trailer wiring harness	
Between 750 kg and 3,500 kg	Holden tow bar	Load distribution hitch.
	Holden trailer wiring harness	
	Brakes on the trailer	

Load Distribution Hitch

- The vehicle may have a load distribution hitch.
- The load distribution hitch must be removed when not in use. Do not leave the hitch assembly in the receiver unless a trailer is attached.
- A load distribution hitch transfers load to the vehicle's front wheels aiding steering and brake performance.

- Do not exceed the maximum towing capacities specified. See Maximum Towing Capacities previously in this section.
- Do not exceed the total front or rear axle loads specified. See Axle Loads under *Vehicle Weight* ⇨ 268.

Towing Precautions

- When heavily loading the vehicle or when towing, inflate tyres to the maximum recommended pressure. See Tyre Pressure ⇨ 244.

- Tighten the tow ball retaining nut to 140 Nm (Newton metres) and check the torque frequently.
- Vehicles handle differently when towing. Take a couple of short distance trips with the trailer before taking a long trip.
- Have the vehicle and trailer correctly maintained and serviced, with particular attention given to the brakes, tyres, suspension, wheel bearings, towing coupling and lighting.
- Use an extended-arm mirror on both sides of the vehicle if necessary.
- If the vehicle has headlamp range adjustment, headlamps may need re-aiming after the loaded trailer has been hitched.
- Use a lower gear and the brakes when descending steep hills.
- Ensure that the tow bar does not obscure the rear number plate. Remove the tow bar tongue when not required for towing.

- The M10 anti-rattle bolt and nut should be removed when towing to prevent damage to the bolt or tow bar tongue.

Trailer Brakes

- Trailer brakes are mandatory on trailers with a trailer mass of more than 750 kg.
- Consult the appropriate regulatory body in your State or Territory for the legal requirements of trailer brakes.

Running-in when Towing

It is recommended that a new vehicle be driven for at least 1,500 km before towing.

If towing is necessary before this, do not exceed 80 km/h. This also applies if the vehicle is fitted with a new or reconditioned engine, transmission or rear axle.

Off-Road Loading and Towing

To reduce the risk of damage to the vehicle (and trailer) and to improve safety when operating the vehicle

off-road, reduce its speed and minimise the load being carried or towed.

Vehicle Maintenance

More frequent vehicle maintenance is required when using the vehicle to tow. Refer to the Service/Warranty Booklet in the vehicle's glovebox.

Trailer Sway Control (TSC)

If the system detects trailer sway movements, engine power is reduced and the vehicle/trailer combination is selectively braked until the trailer sway ceases. While the system is working, keep steering as still as possible.

TSC is a function of the Electronic Stability Control (ESC) system and may be disabled by turning the Traction Control System (TCS) or ESC off. See *Traction Control System (TCS)* ⇨ 198. See *Electronic Stability Control (ESC)* ⇨ 198.

Conversions and Add-Ons

Add-On Electrical Equipment

Fitting Driving Lamps

Do not fit any accessory over the upper or lower air intakes at the front of the vehicle, as this may affect engine cooling.

The Holden Genuine Accessories are an exception, however they should be removed in high load and high temperature conditions.

Caution

In high load and high temperature applications (e.g. towing) no objects should be fitted over the upper or lower air intake at the front of the vehicle, as this could affect cooling. This includes removing Holden Genuine Accessories in this area, in these conditions.

Fitting Roo/Nudge Bars

If a roo/nudge bar is to be fitted, it is critical that the Holden approved roo/nudge bar is used. Other types must not be fitted.

The Holden roo/nudge bar is available from a Holden Dealer and has been tested for compatibility with the vehicle's design, including the Holden airbag system.

Warning

Fitting other types of roo/nudge bars may affect crash performance, airbag performance and engine cooling.

Roo/nudge bars should not be fitted to vehicles operating in urban areas, as they increase the risk of injury to a pedestrian in the event of a collision.

Snorkel Intake

It is necessary to reverse the snorkel intake:

- When driving in snowy conditions.
- Where there are other heavy contaminants such as excessive dust or insect swarms.
- To prevent snow or other contaminants from entering the snorkel and engine air intake.



1. Loosen the two screws.
2. Remove the snorkel intake.

3. Rotate the snorkel intake 180° and refit, securing with the two screws.
 4. Once conditions have stopped, return the snorkel intake to its original position.
- | | | |
|--|--|--|
| | | |
|--|--|--|

Vehicle Care

General Information

General Information	222
Vehicle Storage	222
Emission Information	222
Emission Control System	222

Vehicle Checks

Doing Your Own	
Service Work	223
Bonnet	224
Engine Compartment	
Overview	226
Engine Oil	226
Engine Oil Life System	227
Automatic Transmission	
Fluid	228
Engine Air Cleaner/Filter	229
Engine Coolant	229
Washer Fluid	230
Brake Fluid	230
Battery	231
Fuel Filter	232
Diesel Fuel System	
Bleeding	233
Wiper Blade Replacement	233

Bulb Replacement

Bulb Replacement	233
------------------------	-----

Headlamps	234
Front Turn Signal Lamps	235
Taillamps	236
Licence Plate Lamp	237

Electrical System

Fuses	238
Engine Compartment Fuse	
Block	240
Instrument Panel Fuse	
Block	242

Vehicle Tools

Tools	244
-------------	-----

Wheels and Tyres

Wheels and Tyres	244
Tyre Pressure	244
Tyre Pressure Monitor	
System	245
Tyre Pressure Monitor	
Operation	247
Tread Depth	249
Tyre Rotation	249
Buying New Tyres	250
Wheel Covers	250
Tyre Chains	251
Tyre Changing	251

Jump Starting

Jump Starting	255
---------------------	-----

Towing

Towing the Vehicle	258
--------------------------	-----

Appearance Care

Exterior Care	259
Interior Care	261

General Information

Where specified, use only Holden genuine parts and accessories.

Vehicle Storage

If the vehicle is to be stored for several months:

- Wash and wax the vehicle.
- Clean and preserve rubber seals.
- Change engine oil.
- Drain the washer fluid reservoir.
- Check coolant and corrosion protection.
- Adjust the tyre pressure to the value specified for a full load.
- Park the vehicle in a dry, well ventilated place.
- Engage first or reverse gear to prevent the vehicle from moving.
- Open the bonnet, close all doors and lock the vehicle.

Disconnect the clamp from the negative terminal of the vehicle battery.

Close the bonnet.

Before returning the vehicle to the road:

- Connect the clamp to the negative terminal of the vehicle battery.
- Check the power windows operation.
- Check the tyre pressures.
- Fill the washer fluid reservoir.
- Check the engine oil level.
- Check the coolant level.

Emission Information

The emission control systems are designed to reduce the amount of hydrocarbons (HC), carbon monoxide (CO), and oxides of nitrogen (NOx) that are emitted from the engine and fuel system into the atmosphere. HC and NOx, when exposed to sunlight under certain conditions, contribute to photochemical smog. In addition, CO is toxic to inhale.

Emission Control System

Major emission control systems that the vehicle may have are:

- **Evaporative emission control system.** This system is designed to prevent the escape of fuel vapour from the fuel system and recycle the vapours through the normal combustion process.
- **Crankcase emission control system.** This system is designed to prevent blow-by gases from escaping into the atmosphere and recycle them through the combustion process.
- **Exhaust emission control system.** The various components of this system operate collectively to limit HC, CO and NOx emissions in the exhaust gas. The exhaust emission control system consists of components including electronic control of spark, fuel and idle speed. In addition vehicles have a catalytic converter and closed loop mixture control system.

It is recommended that service and repair to fuel or emission systems be carried out by an authorised Holden Dealer.

Owner responsibility

The engine, engine control system and exhaust system of the vehicle must NOT be modified in any way.

Warning

Any person who removes, modifies or hinders any part of the emission control system may be contravening Australian Design Rules. It is also illegal to drive a vehicle modified in this way.

Maintenance requirements

Have the vehicle serviced at the frequency shown in the Maintenance schedule, in the Service/Warranty Booklet.

It is recommended that servicing be carried out by an authorised Holden Dealer who will maintain the vehicle's emission control system as per the Service/Warranty Booklet.

Vehicle Checks

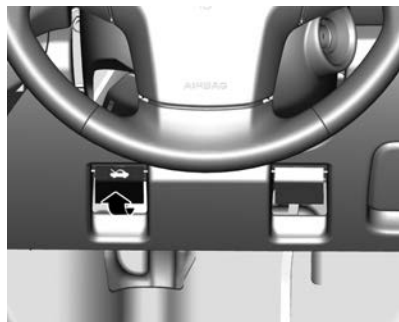
Doing Your Own Service Work



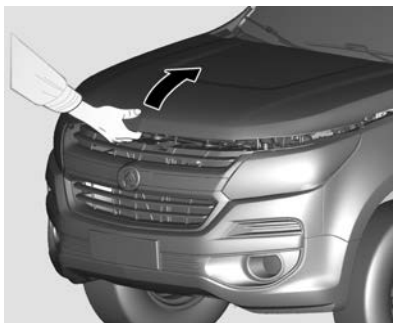
Warning

Do not touch engine compartment components when the ignition is on.

Bonnet Opening



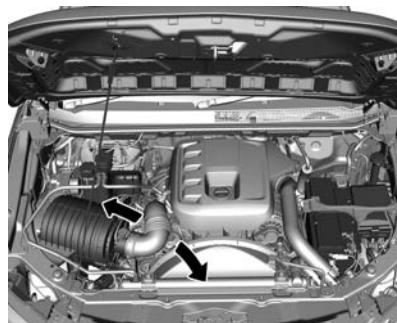
1. Pull the release lever rearwards and upwards.



Note

Do not step on the front Nudge Bar (if equipped) to access the engine compartment

2. Push the safety catch towards the driver's side and open the bonnet.



3. Pull the support rod up and away from the holder and secure.

Closing

Warning

To avoid injury and/or damage to the vehicle, check each time, before the bonnet is closed, that the contact area is unobstructed.

Before closing the bonnet, be sure all the filler caps are closed properly.

1. Place the support rod into the holder.
2. Lower the bonnet to approximately 30 cm and allow it to drop into the catch.
3. Check that the bonnet is engaged.
4. If it is not engaged, open the bonnet and repeat Steps 2 and 3.

Note

Do not push on the bonnet to close.

Warning

If while driving you notice that the bonnet has not been properly closed, pull the vehicle over to the side of the road at the earliest possible moment and close the bonnet correctly.

Engine Compartment Overview



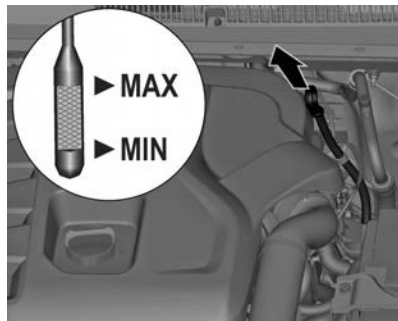
Diesel Engine

- | | |
|--|--|
| 1. Engine Coolant ⇨ 229 | 6. Engine Compartment Fuse Block ⇨ 240 |
| 2. Brake Fluid ⇨ 230 | 7. Battery ⇨ 231 |
| 3. Engine Oil ⇨ 226 | 8. Engine Air Cleaner/Filter ⇨ 229 |
| 4. Engine Oil Dipstick. See Engine Oil ⇨ 226 | |
| 5. Washer Fluid ⇨ 230 | |

Engine Oil

Checking Oil Level

- Check the engine oil level regularly and before a long journey.
 - Maintain the correct level.
 - The engine must be at operating temperature and the ignition turned off for at least 10 minutes.
1. Park the vehicle on a level surface.



2. Remove the dipstick and wipe clean.

3. Insert the dipstick to the stop on the handle.
4. Remove and read the engine oil level.

The level should be at the **MAX** mark. Add oil if the level is at the **MIN** mark.

5. Insert the dipstick to the stop on the handle.

Note

The engine oil level must not exceed the **MAX** mark on the dipstick.

For correct engine oil specification, see *Recommended Fluids and Lubricants* ⇨ 264.

Adding Engine Oil

See *Capacities and Specifications* ⇨ 270.



The engine oil filler cap is located on the top of the engine.

1. Rotate the engine oil filler cap anticlockwise and remove.
2. Add enough oil to reach below the **MAX** mark on the dipstick.
3. Check the level on the dipstick and add further oil if necessary.

The engine oil must not exceed the **MAX** mark on the dipstick.

Caution

Overfilled engine oil must be drained or suctioned out.

4. Replace the engine oil filler cap tightly.

Danger

Engine oil is an irritant and if ingested, can cause illness or death.

Keep out of reach of children.

Avoid repeated or prolonged contact with skin.

Wash exposed areas with soap and water or hand cleaner.

Be careful when draining the engine oil as it may be hot.

Engine Oil Life System

When to Change Engine Oil

This vehicle has a computer system that indicates when to change the engine oil and filter. This is based on a combination of factors which include engine revolutions, engine temperature, and miles driven. Based on driving conditions, the mileage at which an oil change is

indicated can vary considerably. For the oil life system to work properly, the system must be reset every time the oil is changed.

On some vehicles, when the system has calculated that oil life has been diminished, a **CHANGE ENGINE OIL SOON** message comes on to indicate that an oil change is necessary. See *Engine Oil Messages* ⇨ 78. Change the oil as soon as possible within the next 1 000 km (600 mi). It is possible that, if driving under the best conditions, the oil life system might indicate that an oil change is not necessary for up to a year. The engine oil and filter must be changed at least once a year and, at this time, the system must be reset. For vehicles without the **CHANGE ENGINE OIL SOON** message, an oil change is needed when the **OIL LIFE REMAINING** percentage is near 0%. Your dealer has trained service people who will perform this work and reset the system. It is also important to check

the oil regularly over the course of an oil drain interval and keep it at the proper level.

If the system is ever reset accidentally, the engine oil and filter must be changed in accordance with the Maintenance schedule outlined in the Service/Warranty Booklet. Remember to reset the oil life system whenever the oil is changed.

How to Reset the Engine Oil Life System

Reset the system whenever the engine oil is changed so that the system can calculate the next engine oil change. Always reset the engine oil life to 100% after every oil change. It will not reset itself. To reset the engine oil life system:

1. Display the **OIL LIFE REMAINING** on the Driver Information System (DIC). See *Driver Information Centre (DIC)* ⇨ 75.
2. Press and hold **SET/CLR** for several seconds. The oil life will change to 100%.

If the vehicle has a **CHANGE ENGINE OIL SOON** message and it comes back on when the vehicle is started and/or the **OIL LIFE REMAINING** is near 0%, the engine oil life system has not been reset. Repeat the procedure.

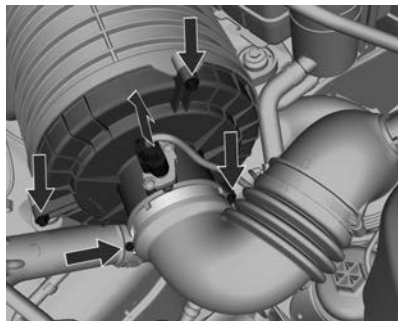
Automatic Transmission Fluid

How to Check Automatic Transmission Fluid

It is not necessary to check the transmission fluid level. A transmission fluid leak is the only reason for fluid loss. If a leak occurs, take the vehicle to your dealer and have it repaired as soon as possible.

There is a special procedure for checking and changing the transmission fluid. Because this procedure is difficult, this should be done at the dealer.

Engine Air Cleaner/Filter



To replace the engine air filter, release the clamp and remove the air cleaner outlet duct. Disconnect the air sensor, unscrew the 3 screws and remove the filter housing.

Engine Coolant

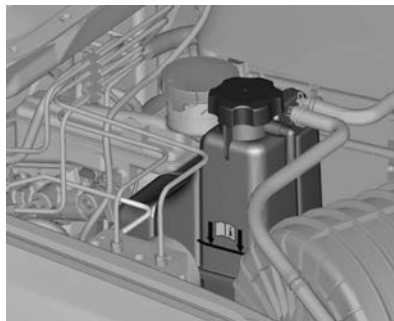
Engine Coolant Level

Check the coolant level at least once a week.

Checking Coolant Level

Warning

Do not remove the radiator cap if the engine and radiator are still hot. Scalding fluid and steam can be blown out under pressure which could cause serious burns.



If the cooling system is cold, the coolant level should be above the line on the coolant reservoir.

Adding Coolant

Caution

If the coolant level is too low, engine damage may occur.

Do not spill coolant on the vehicle's exterior surfaces as it can damage the paintwork. If you do, wash it off immediately.

Note

Use only approved coolant. See *Recommended Fluids and Lubricants* ⇨ 264.

1. Turn the ignition off.
2. Remove the coolant reservoir cap.
3. Add the required amount of coolant.
4. Replace the cap securely.

If the coolant requires regular topping up, contact a Holden Dealer.

⚠ Warning

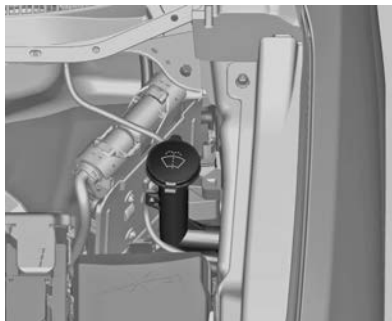
Avoid repeated or prolonged contact with coolant.
Wash off with soap and water.
Keep out of reach of children.

If the coolant level is low, there may be a leak in the cooling system:

1. Look for leaks at the radiator hoses and connections, heater hoses and connections, radiator and water pump.
Take care when checking these areas as they may still be hot.
2. If a major leak or other problems are found, do not run the engine until all problems have been repaired. Contact a Holden Dealer.
3. If no problems are found, refill the coolant reservoir. See Adding Coolant previously in this section.

⚠ Warning

Do not remove the radiator cap if the engine and radiator are still hot. Scalding fluid and steam can be blown out under pressure which could cause serious burns.

Washer Fluid

Check the fluid level weekly.

Adding Washer Fluid

1. Lift the front of the cap up.

Use the correct amount of washer fluid additive. Refer to a Holden Dealer.

Do not use ordinary soap or detergent as they froth up and damage the wiper rubbers.

2. Secure the cap.

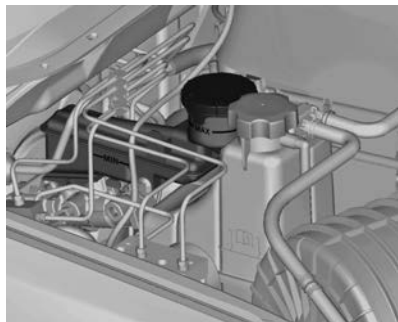
Brake Fluid**⚠ Warning**

Brake fluid is poisonous and corrosive and will damage the paint finish of the vehicle if spilled.

Caution

Avoid contact with eyes and skin.
Wash any affected area immediately.

Checking Brake/Clutch (Manual) Fluid Level



The level should be between the **MIN** and **MAX** marks.

If the fluid level is correct, do not remove the reservoir cap, as brake fluid exposed to the atmosphere will quickly absorb moisture.

Adding Brake Fluid

See *Recommended Fluids and Lubricants* ⇨ 264.

1. Turn the ignition off.
2. Wipe the sides of the cap clean.

3. Rotate the brake fluid reservoir cap anticlockwise and remove.
4. Top up with the recommended brake fluid.

Warning

Using brake fluid other than GM recommended brake fluid may cause corrosion to components of the braking system and reduced braking performance.

Use only new brake fluid. Use of old, used or inferior brake fluid may endanger the functioning of the brake system.

5. Secure the cap by rotating clockwise and clean up any spilt fluid.

If the brake fluid requires regular topping up, contact a Holden Dealer immediately.

Caution

Do not dispose of used brake fluid with household waste.

Use the local, authorised waste management facility.

Battery

Warning

Batteries emit an explosive gas mixture which may be ignited. Therefore, you should keep sparks and flames away from the battery at all times. Never smoke near a battery.

Batteries contain sulphuric acid. If acid contacts skin or clothing, flush immediately with plenty of water. In case of eye contact, flush with plenty of water and contact a doctor immediately. Battery acid also damages paint and fabrics. To minimise damage, wash off immediately.

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

Take care with all metal objects and tools including items you may wear (for example jewellery, rings and metal watch bands) near battery terminals.

The vehicle battery is maintenance free, provided that the driving profile allows sufficient charging of the battery. Short distance driving and frequent engine starts can discharge the battery. Avoid the use of unnecessary electrical consumers.



Batteries must be disposed of at an appropriate recycling collection point.

Laying up the vehicle for more than four weeks can lead to battery discharge. Disconnect the battery

according to the procedure described in Battery Disconnection, thus avoiding its discharge.

Battery Replacement

For battery location, see *Engine Compartment Overview* ⇨ 226.

For replacement, refer to a Holden Dealer or authorised repairer.

Caution

Do not dispose of batteries with household waste.

Use the local, authorised waste management facility.

Battery Disconnection

The battery may discharge if the vehicle is not used for approximately four weeks.

To disconnect the battery:

1. Turn the ignition off.
2. Disconnect the clamp from the negative terminal of the vehicle battery.

Ensure the ignition is turned off before reconnecting the vehicle battery.

For emergency starting when the battery is flat, see *Jump Starting* ⇨ 255.

Fuel Filter

When the water level in fuel filter is excessive, **Water in Fuel – Contact Service** illuminates on the instrument panel.

Caution

The engine and fuel system may be seriously damaged if the vehicle is driven while **Water in Fuel – Contact Service** is illuminated.

Contact a Holden Dealer immediately to have the fuel filter drained.

Note

The fuel filter will be drained when the vehicle is serviced. Refer to the Service/Warranty Booklet.

Diesel Fuel System Bleeding

The system requires bleeding if the vehicle has run out of fuel.

Note

A minimum of 5 litres of diesel fuel must be in the tank for the bleeding operation to work correctly.

1. Turn the ignition on for 15 seconds, and then off.
2. Repeat Step 1 three times.
3. Start the engine for a maximum of 40 seconds.
4. Repeat Steps 1 to 3 after 5 seconds.

If the engine does not start, contact a Holden Dealer.

Wiper Blade Replacement

Regularly check the condition of the wiper blades.

- Replace hard, brittle or cracked blades or those that smear dirt on the windscreen.
- If the blades are not wiping properly, clean both the blades and the windscreen. See *Exterior Care* ⇨ 259.

Bulb Replacement

Contact a trained service technician if unsure about the bulb replacement process.

When replacing bulbs:

- Turn the ignition off and remove the key.
- Turn off related switches.
- Fit bulbs of the specified wattage only.
- Do not touch bulbs or reflectors with bare hands.
- Clean stained bulbs with methylated spirits.

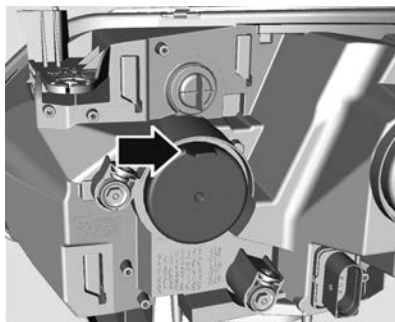
Bulbs to be Changed by a Holden Dealer

- Centre high mount stop lamp
- Side turn signal lamps
- Daytime running lamps (DRL)
- Turn signal lamps on the exterior mirrors
- Courtesy lamp
- Reading lamps
- Instrument panel lamps

- LED rear lamps
- Fog lamps

Caution

Condensation may temporarily appear on the inside of exterior lamp lenses after rain or washing the vehicle. Condensation occurs when there is a temperature difference between the inside and outside of the lamp allowing a fine mist on the inside surface of the lamp lens. This condensation will disappear when the vehicle is in a dry environment or the lamp is on. If water does collect in the lamp contact a Holden Dealer.

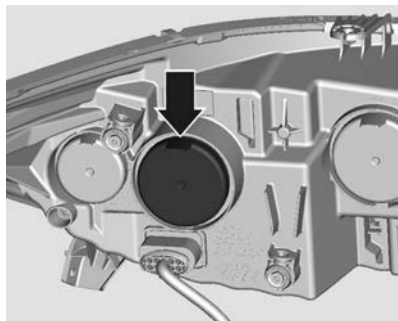
Headlamps**High Beam**

1. Remove the protective cover.

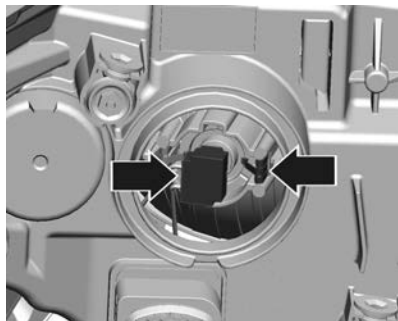


2. Unplug the connector from bulb.
3. Press the spring clip outward and disengage it.
4. Remove the bulb from the reflector housing.
5. When fitting a new bulb, engage the lugs in the recesses on the reflector.
6. Engage the spring clip.
7. Plug the connector onto bulb.
8. Place the protective cover in the right position and close it.

Low Beam



1. Remove the protective cover.



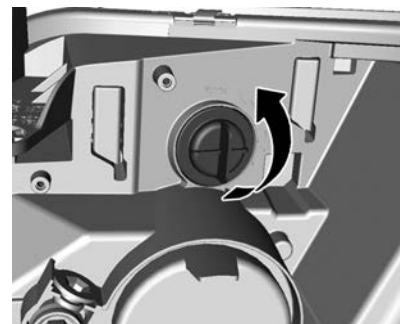
2. Unplug the connector from bulb.
3. Press the spring clip and disengage the bulb.
4. Remove the bulb from the reflector housing.
5. When fitting a new bulb, engage the lugs in the recesses on the reflector and press the bulb into position.
6. Plug the connector onto bulb.
7. Place the protective cover in the right position and close it.

Headlight Aim

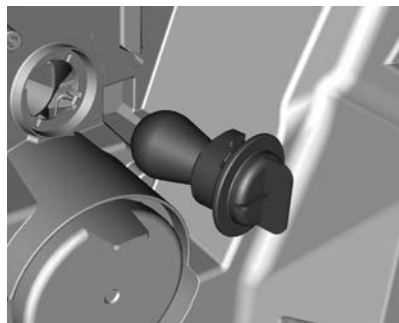
Caution

If the headlights need to be re-aimed, it is recommended that the vehicle is taken to a Holden dealer for service, because it is related with safety.

Front Turn Signal Lamps



1. Rotate bulb holder counterclockwise and disengage.



2. Push the bulb into the socket slightly, rotate counterclockwise and remove the bulb.
3. Insert a new bulb into the bulb holder and refit the holder into the reflector and rotate clockwise to engage.

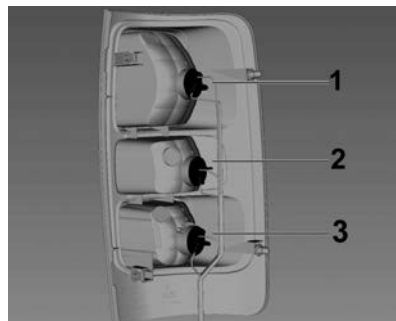
Taillamps



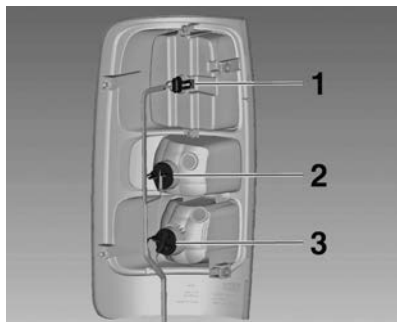
1. Unscrew both fasteners.



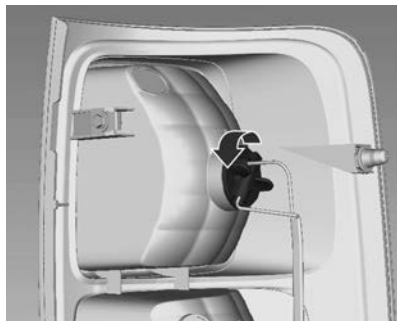
2. Remove the tail light assembly by pulling straight out of the body. Take care that the cable duct remains in position.



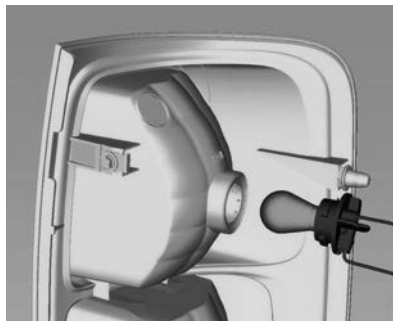
3. Tail light/brake light (1)
Turn signal (2)
Reverse light (3)



For LED version just replace lights 2 and 3. The brake light should be replaced by a Holden dealer.

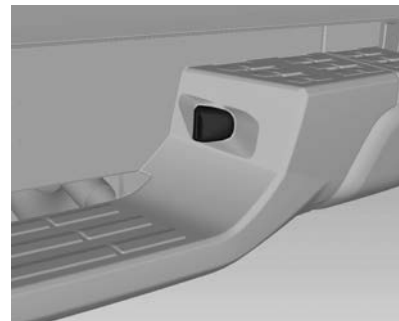


4. Rotate the relevant bulb holder counterclockwise.



5. Remove bulb holder. Push the bulb into the socket slightly, rotate counterclockwise and remove the bulb.
6. Insert a new bulb into the bulb holder and refit the holder into the tail light assembly and fasten into place. Install tail light assembly in body and tighten the fasteners. Close the covers and engage.
7. Switch on the ignition, operate and check all lights.

Licence Plate Lamp



1. The number plate light is located on the rear bumper.



2. On the back side of the bumper, rotate the bulb holder counterclockwise to disengage.
3. Remove bulb from the holder and replace the bulb.
4. Insert the bulb holder in bulb housing and rotate clockwise.

Electrical System

Fuses

Fuse boxes are located:

- In the engine compartment
- In a storage compartment on the driver's side

There is a primary fuse holder connected to the positive battery post.

Warning

Turn off the ignition (LOCK position) and any electrical equipment before changing a fuse.

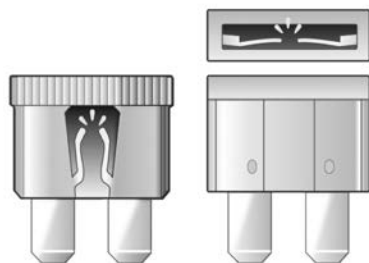
- Replace blown fuses promptly.
- A blown fuse can be recognised by its melted wire.
- Do not replace the fuse until the cause of the fault has been remedied.
- Some functions are protected by several fuses.

Warning

When replacing a fuse be sure to use a fuse of the specified amperage.

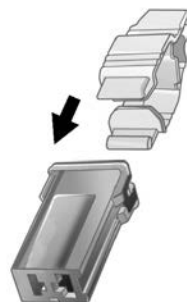
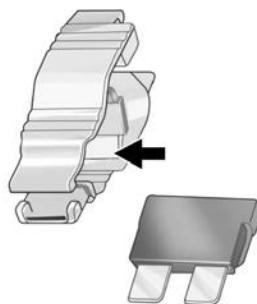
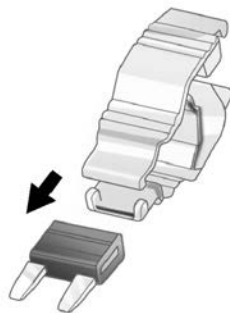
Never install a wire or similar as it could damage electrical components and cause a fire.

Any improper alterations to the electrical system may cause a fire hazard and engine damage. To maintain your own safety and that of the vehicle, have any work involving the electrical system or the replacement of high current fuses or relays carried out by a Holden Dealer.



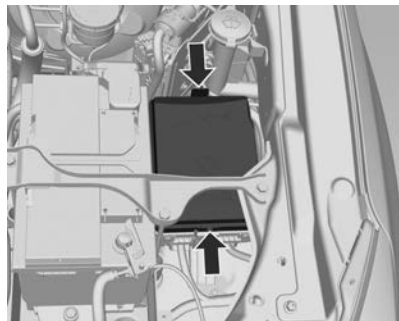
Fuse Extractor

A fuse extractor can be located in the fuse box in the engine compartment.



Place the fuse extractor on the top or side of the fuse to extract the fuse.

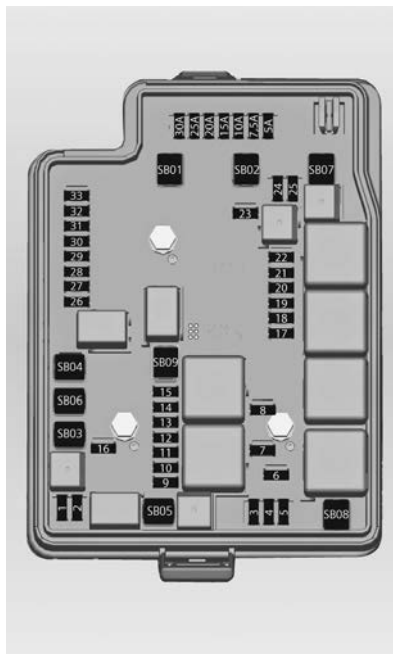
Engine Compartment Fuse Block



The fuse box is in the front left of the engine compartment.

Disengage the cover, lift it upward and remove it.

Not all fuse box descriptions in this manual may apply to your vehicle. When inspecting the fuse box, refer to the fuse box label.



Mini Fuses	Usage
1	10A – Compressor A/C Clutch

Mini Fuses	Usage
2	Not Used
3	15A - Electric Power Steering (EPS) (if available)
4	Not Used
5	15A – Horn
6	15A – Front Fog Lamp (if available)
7	10A – High Beam LH
8	10A – High Beam RH
9	7.5A - Engine Control Module - (Diesel)
10	15A – Powertrain Relay (3) – (Diesel)
11	20A – Engine Control Module (1) (Diesel)
12	10A – Powertrain Relay (1)
13	10A – Powertrain Relay (2)
14	15A – Powertrain Relay (4)

Mini Fuses	Usage
15	15A – Run Crank Relay Signal
16	15A – Automatic Transmission Control Module (if available)
17	10A – Transfer Case Module, Head Lamp Leveling, Trailer Interface Module (if available)
18	10A – Power Supply Cluster - A/C - Airbag Module
19	20A – Fuel Pump (Diesel)
20	Not Used
21	30A – Rear Defogger (if available)
22	15A - Outside Rear View Mirror Defogger (if available)
23	15A - Cab Heater (Diesel)

Mini Fuses	Usage
24	20A - Rear Wiper (SUV)
25	10A - Front / Rear (SUV) Washer Pump
26	10A - Park Assist (if available)
27	5A – Body Control Module
28	Auxiliary Lamps Provision (If equipped)
29	30A – ABS or ESC Module (if available)
30	10A – Horn
31	15A – Body Control Module
32	15A – Engine Control Module (Battery) (Diesel)
33	10A – Communication Wire Between Modules

JCase Fuses	Usage
SB01	50A – ABS or ESC Module Pump (if available)
SB02	30A – Transfer Case Control Module (4X4) (if available)
SB03	60A – Preheating Glow Plug Module (Diesel)
SB04	-
SB05	30A – Starter Motor Solenoid
SB06	30A – Front Wiper
SB07	30A – Fuel Heater (Diesel)
SB08	Not Used (Diesel)
SB09	30A – Spare

Maxi	Usage
F34*	30A – Trailer Hitch Module (if available)
*: Located near battery positive terminal	

Relays	Usage
RLY01	Starter
RLY03	High Beam
RLY05	Viscous Heater (Diesel)
RLY08	Front Wiper Control
RLY09	Front Wiper Speed
RLY10	Rear Defogger and Outside Rear View Mirror Defogger (if available)
RLY11	Powertrain
RLY12	A/C Clutch
RLY13	Fuel Heater (Diesel)
RLY14	Not Used (Diesel)
RLY15	Not Used
RLY18	Run Crank

Relays	Usage
RLY19	Fuel Pump (Diesel)

Instrument Panel Fuse Block

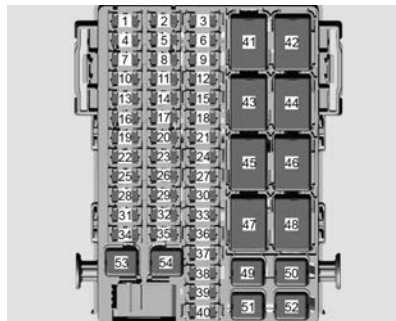
The fuse box is behind the instrument panel cap.



Remove the instrument panel cap in the direction of the arrow.

Reinstall the cap in reverse order.

Not all fuse box descriptions in this manual may apply to your vehicle. When inspecting the fuse box, refer to the fuse box label.



Mini Fuses	Usage
1	20A – Body Control Module (6)
3	20A – Cigarette Lighter (if available)
6	20A – Front and Rear Power Outlets (if available)
7	30A – Body Control Module (8)
10	20A – Radio (if available)
11	2A – Ignition Switch

Mini Fuses	Usage
12	15A - Side Blind Zone (SBZ) (If available)
13	15A – Body Control Module (3)
14	10A – Front A/C Control Module
15	15A – Seat Heated (If available)
16	15A – Body Control Module (1)
17	30A – Front Door Power Window Switch
19	30A – Rear Door Power Window Switch (if available)
20	15A – Body Control Module (4)
21	10A – Spare
22	30A – Power Seat (if available)
25	10A – Sensing and Diagnose Module (SDM)

Mini Fuses	Usage
26	15A – Body Control Module (2)
27	2A – Clock Spring
28	7.5A – Data Link Connector (DLC)
31	10A – Instrument Panel Cluster (IPC), Displays - Radio (Center Stack), USB
33	10A – Central Gateway Module (CGM) - Cyber Security
34	30A – Front A/C Blower
37	10A – Front Collision Alert (FCA) / Rain Sensor (if available)
39	10A – Rear View Mirrors (if available)

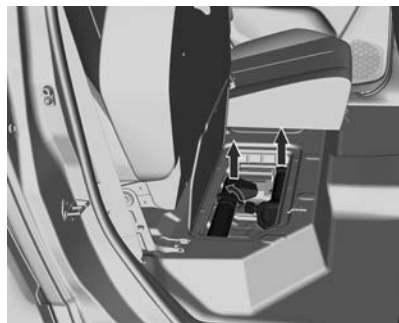
JCase Fuses	Usage
53	40A – BUS-C (fuses: F12, F33, F37, F39, F40)
54	40A – Accessory (12V)

Relays	Usage
RLY45	C-Enable
RLY46	RAP and Accessory (12V)
RLY48	Run relay

Vehicle Tools

Tools

The jack and tools are located in a storage compartment behind the driver's seat or under a back seat. See *Tyre Changing* ⇨ 251.



1. Unhook the strap.
2. Remove the jack by rotating the lever on the side anticlockwise.

When replacing the jack, rotate clockwise to secure into the bracket.

3. Remove the tools.

Wheels and Tyres

Tyre and Rim Condition

- To avoid tyre and rim damage and possible tyre blow-out, do not drive over sharp edges.
- Drive over edges slowly and at right angles, if possible.
- When parking, ensure the tyres are not pressed against the edge of the kerb.
- Check the tyres regularly for damage, stones, punctures, cuts, cracks, bulges, etc. Check the rims for damage. Contact a Holden Dealer, if in doubt.

Tyre Pressure

Keep the tyres at the recommended pressures to avoid increased fuel consumption, uneven and premature tyre wear.

- Tyre pressure should be checked when cold as tyre pressure will increase as the tyres warm up.

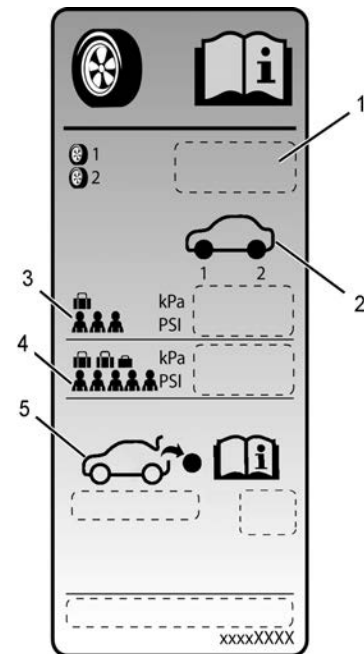
- Check the air pressure of tyres (including the spare) weekly, to ensure occupant safety, as well as reducing fuel consumption and increasing the life of the tyres.
- Replace any valve dust caps or extensions.

Tyre Placard



The correct pressures for tyres are shown on the tyre placard in the driver's door frame and in the tyre pressure table. See *Tyre Pressure* ⇨ 270.

Always inflate the spare tyre to the pressure specified for maximum load.



1. Tyre specifications

2. Tyre positions
3. Normal load (up to three people)
4. Full load (five people plus load)
5. Spare tyre information

Tyre Pressure Monitor System

This vehicle may have a Tyre Pressure Monitor System (TPMS).

Caution

Modifications made to the Tyre Pressure Monitor System (TPMS) by anyone other than an authorised service facility may void authorisation to use the system.

Maintaining manufacturer's recommended tire pressure is part of best practices to optimize the fuel consumption of the vehicle.

The Tyre Pressure Monitor System (TPMS) uses radio and sensor technology to check tyre pressure

levels. The TPMS sensors monitor the air pressure in your tires and transmit tire pressure readings to a receiver located in the vehicle.

Note

The spare wheel may not be fitted with a TPMS sensor.

The tire pressure monitoring system checks the pressure of all four road wheels once a minute when vehicle speed exceeds a certain limit.

Caution

The TPMS is not a substitute for proper tire maintenance, and it is the driver's responsibility to maintain correct tire pressure, even if under-inflation has not reached the level to trigger illumination of the TPMS low tire pressure light.

Each tire, including the spare (if provided), should be checked monthly when cold. If required, the tires should be inflated to the pressure specified on the tire placard. (If your vehicle has tires of

a different size than the size indicated on the tire placard, you should determine the proper tire inflation pressure for those tires.)

As an added safety feature, the TPMS illuminates a low tire pressure light when one or more of your tires is significantly under-inflated.

Note

Accordingly, when the low tire pressure light illuminates, you should stop and check your tires as soon as possible, and inflate them to the proper pressure. Driving on a significantly under-inflated tire causes the tyre to overheat and can lead to tyre failure. Under-inflation also reduces fuel efficiency and tyre tread life, and may affect the vehicle's handling and stopping ability.

Caution

Tire sealants could damage the TPMS sensors. TPMS sensor damage caused by using tire sealants is not covered by the vehicle warranty.

Your vehicle has also been equipped with a TPMS malfunction indicator to indicate when the system is not operating properly. The TPMS malfunction indicator is combined with the low tire pressure light. When the system detects a malfunction, the light will flash for approximately one minute and then remain continuously illuminated. This sequence will continue upon subsequent vehicle start-ups as long as the malfunction exists.

When the malfunction indicator is illuminated, the system may not be able to detect or signal low tyre pressure as intended. TPMS malfunctions may occur for a variety of reasons, including the installation of replacement or alternate tyres or wheels on the vehicle that prevent

the TPMS from functioning properly. Always check the TPMS malfunction light after replacing one or more tires or wheels on your vehicle to ensure that the replacement or alternate tires and wheels allow the TPMS to continue to function properly.

See *Tyre Pressure Monitor Operation* ⇨ 247.

Tire Learn (If equipped)

The sensors are calibrated to the tire/wheel positions, using a TPMS relearn tool. See your dealer for service.

Vehicle Loading

Select SET/CLR to define one of following options:

Light : for comfort pressure up to 3 people.

ECO : for ECO pressure up to 3 people.

Max : for full loading.

The ECO tire pressure serves to achieve the smallest amount of fuel consumption possible.

Incorrect tyre pressures will impair safety, vehicle handling, comfort and fuel economy and will increase tyre wear.

The tyre pressure tables show all possible tyre combinations. See *Tyre Pressure* ⇨ 270.

If the tyre pressure shall be reduced or increased on a vehicle with tyre pressure monitoring system, switch off ignition. After adjusting tyre pressure switch on ignition and select the according setting as shown previously in this section.

After inflating driving may be required to update the tyre pressure values in the DIC. During this time (!) may light up.

Caution

The TPMS is not a substitute for proper tyre maintenance, and it is the driver's responsibility to maintain correct tyre pressure, even if under-inflation has not

(Continued)

Caution (Continued)

reached the level to trigger illumination of the TPMS low tyre pressure light.

Tyre Pressure Monitor Operation



When a low tyre pressure condition is detected, the TPMS illuminates the low tyre pressure warning light located on the instrument cluster. If the warning light comes on, stop as soon as possible and inflate the tyres to the recommended pressure shown on the Tyre and Loading Information label. See *Wheels and Tyres* ⇨ 244.

A message to check the pressure in a specific tyre displays in the Driver Information Center (DIC) display.

The low tyre pressure warning light and the DIC warning message come on at each ignition cycle until the tyres are inflated to the correct inflation pressure. Using the DIC, tyre pressure levels can be viewed. For additional information and details about the DIC operation and displays see *Driver Information Centre (DIC)* ⇨ 75.

The low tyre pressure warning light may come on in cool weather when the vehicle is first started, and then turn off as the vehicle is driven. This could be an early indicator that the air pressure is getting low and must be inflated to the proper pressure.

A Tyre and Loading Information label shows the size of the original equipment tyres and the correct inflation pressure for the tyres when they are cold. See *Tyre Pressure* ⇨ 270, for an example of the Tyre and Loading Information label and its location. Also see *Wheels and Tyres* ⇨ 244.

The TPMS can warn about a low tyre pressure condition but it does not replace normal tyre maintenance. See *Wheels and Tyres* ⇨ 244 and *Tyre Rotation* ⇨ 249.

Caution

Tyre sealant materials are not all the same. A non-approved tire sealant could damage the TPMS sensors. TPMS sensor damage caused by using an incorrect tire sealant is not covered by the vehicle warranty. Always use only the GM approved tire sealant available through your dealer or included in the vehicle.

TPMS Malfunction Light and Message

The TPMS will not function properly if one or more of the TPMS sensors are missing or inoperable. When the system detects a malfunction, the low tire warning light flashes for about one minute and then stays on for the remainder of the ignition

cycle. A DIC warning message also displays. The malfunction light and DIC warning message come on at each ignition cycle until the problem is corrected. Some of the conditions that can cause these to come on are:

- One of the road tires has been replaced with the spare tire. The spare tire does not have a TPMS sensor. The malfunction light and DIC message should go off after the road tire is replaced and the sensor calibration process is performed successfully. See "TPMS Sensor Calibration Process" later in this section.
- The TPMS sensor calibration process was not done or not completed successfully after rotating the tires. The malfunction light and the DIC message should go off after successfully completing the sensor calibration process. See "TPMS Sensor Calibration Process" later in this section.

- One or more TPMS sensors are missing or damaged. The DIC message and the malfunction light should go off when the TPMS sensors are installed and the sensor calibration process is performed successfully. See your dealer for service.
- Replacement tyres or wheels do not match the original equipment tyres or wheels. Tyres and wheels other than those recommended could prevent the TPMS from functioning properly. See *Tread Depth* ⇨ 249.
- Operating electronic devices or being near facilities using radio wave frequencies similar to the TPMS could cause the TPMS sensors to malfunction.

If the TPMS is not functioning properly, it cannot detect or signal a low tyre condition. See your dealer for service if the TPMS malfunction light and DIC message come on and stay on.

TPMS Sensor Calibration Process

Each TPMS sensor has a unique identification code. The identification code needs to be matched to a new tire/wheel position after rotating the tires or replacing one or more of the TPMS sensors. The TPMS sensor calibration process should also be performed after replacing a spare tire with a road tire containing the TPMS sensor. The malfunction light and the DIC message should go off at the next ignition cycle. The sensors are matched to the tire/wheel positions, using a TPMS relearn tool, in the following order: driver side front tire, passenger side front tire, passenger side rear tire, and driver side rear. See your dealer for service.

Tread Depth

Check tread depth at regular intervals.



- Replace the tyres when they are worn to the point where the tread wear indicators (TWI) appear.
- Tyres age, even if they are not used. Replacement of tyres every six years is recommended.

Warning

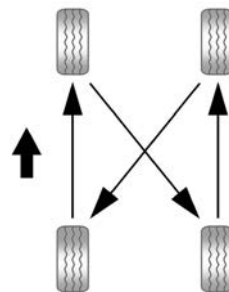
Do not attempt to drive on a flat tyre more than is necessary to stop safely. Driving even a short distance can damage the tyre and wheel beyond repair. Tyres which have been repaired or retreaded

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

are not capable of being driven safely at high speeds. Therefore, their use is not recommended.

Tyre Rotation



It is recommended that you rotate tires at every scheduled maintenance service

Different forces on the front and rear tyres make them wear differently, depending on several factors, such

as road surface, driving style, suspension alignment, wheel balancing, tyre pressure, etc.

The owner must evaluate the vehicle wear. This includes regular tyre rotation, which should be performed at each inspection. Tyre rotation is vital to achieving even tread wear and long tyre life.

Tyre rotation must be performed as indicated in the illustration.

Tyre condition is checked at periodic inspections by your Dealer, who can diagnose signs of uneven wear that may compromise your car's safety and performance.

Never include the temporary spare tyre in the tyre rotation due to size differences.

Caution

- Ageing causes tyre rubber to deteriorate. This also happens to the spare tyre even if it has not been used.

(Continued)

Caution (Continued)

- Tyre ageing depends on many conditions of use including temperature, load conditions, and tyre inflation pressure.
- A spare tyre which has not been used within a 6-year period should be used in emergencies only. If you need to use this tyre, drive at low speeds.

Buying New Tyres

Refer to the tyre placard on the vehicle for tyre size and load rating.

Using a different size or type of tyre may affect:

- Ride
- Handling
- Speedometer accuracy
- Vehicle ground clearance
- Tyre clearance
- Snow chain clearance



Warning

Do not use different sizes or types of tyres and wheels than those originally fitted to the vehicle. Safety and performance of the vehicle may be affected. It may also affect road handling and lead to serious injury.

When replacing tyres, install all four tyres and wheels of the same size, type, tread, brand and load-carrying capacity.

Wheel Covers

Use wheel covers and tyres that are factory approved for the vehicle and which comply with all of the relevant wheel and tyre combination requirements.



Warning

Use of incorrect tyres or wheel covers may result in damage to the vehicle and personal injury.

Tyre Chains

- Tyre chains should be fitted only on the rear wheels.
- Remove large hubcaps and valve extensions that contact parts of the chain.

Warning

Tyre chains may only be used at speeds up to 50 km/h. Tyre chains should only be used for short distances if the roads are not snow covered. The hard road surface causes rapid wear and the chain may break. Tyre chain links should not be thicker than 13 mm and the clasp should be well away from the bodywork. Thicker chains may damage the vehicle body.

- Check the tyre placard for correct tyre pressures. See Tyre Placard under *Tyre Pressure* ⇨ 244.

- Whenever tyre chains are fitted, switch off the ESC. See *Electronic Stability Control (ESC)* ⇨ 198.
- If driving in snowy conditions with a snorkel, see Snorkel Intake under *Add-On Electrical Equipment* ⇨ 219.

Tyre Changing

Warning

All passengers must be out of the vehicle when it is being jacked.

Do not jack a vehicle with a trailer attached. Remove the trailer first.

Only jack the vehicle on hard, level surfaces.

Ensure moving parts of the jack are adequately lubricated before use.

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

Use the jack only at the designated lifting points. Use in other locations may result in the vehicle falling off the jack, or damage to the vehicle.

Do not start or run the engine while the vehicle is supported by the jack.

Use the jack only for lifting the vehicle when changing wheels.

Do not get under a vehicle that is supported by a jack. No person should place any portion of their body under a vehicle that is supported by a jack.

Vehicles with alloy wheels may have a steel spare wheel. Drive carefully and do not exceed 80 km/h if the tyre size or tread pattern of the spare tyre is different to the other tyres on the vehicle. Although the spare tyre was fully inflated when the vehicle

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

was new, it can lose air over time. Check the inflation pressure regularly.

After installing the spare tyre on the vehicle, stop as soon as possible to check the inflation pressure is correct. Have the flat tyre repaired or replaced and installed back on the vehicle as soon as possible.

1. Park on a hard, level surface, in a safe location.
2. Apply the park brake firmly.
3. Place manual transmissions in first or reverse gear.
Place automatic transmissions in position **P**.
4. Switch the hazard warning flashers on.
5. Turn off the engine and remove the key.

6. Chock the wheel diagonally opposite the flat tyre with a suitable solid object.

Note

Do not change more than one wheel at one time.

7. Remove the tools. See *Tools* ⇨ 244.
8. Assemble the wheel wrench, jack handle extensions and the jack handle using a screwdriver.

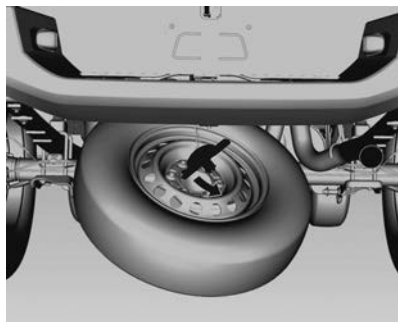


The vehicle may have a spare wheel retainer cover.

9. Remove the spare wheel retainer cover and insert the chiselled end of the jack handle, at a slight angle, through the central hole in the rear bumper and into the funnel-shaped guide.



10. Rotate the wheel wrench anticlockwise to lower the spare tyre to the ground.
11. Continue to rotate the wheel wrench until the spare tyre can be pulled out from under the vehicle.

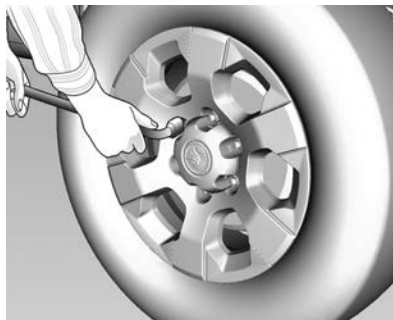


12. Tilt the retainer and slide it up the cable so it can be pulled up through the wheel opening.
13. Place the spare tyre near the flat tyre.

Wheel nut removal

14. Remove the centre cap by placing the chisel end of the wheel wrench into one of the slots on the cap and gently prise the cap out.

To protect the wheel, place a soft cloth between the wheel wrench and the wheel.



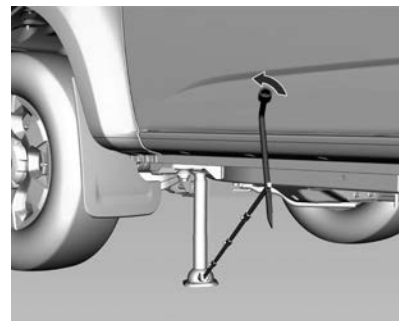
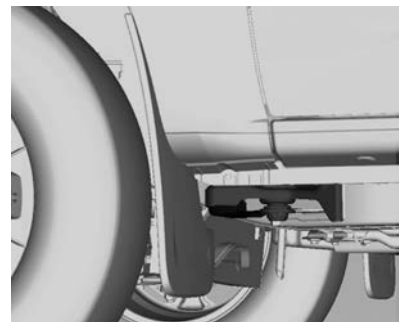
15. Turn the wheel wrench anticlockwise to loosen all the wheel nuts.

Note

Do not remove the wheel nuts at this stage.

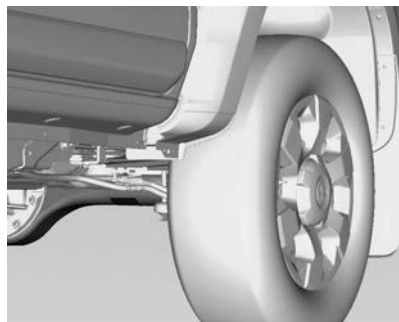
Jacking procedure

Front position:



If the flat tyre is on the front of the vehicle, position the jack to the rear of the front tyre in the cut out on the frame.

Rear position:



If the flat tyre is on the rear, position the jack under the rear axle and get as close as possible to the shock absorber.

16. Set the jack to the necessary height before positioning it directly below the jacking point in a manner that prevents it from slipping.

Warning

Failure to position the jack as described could cause the vehicle to slip off the jack.

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

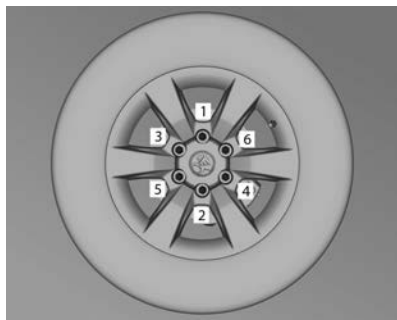
Do not get under a vehicle that is supported by a jack. No person should place any portion of their body under a vehicle that is supported by a jack.

17. Attach the jack handle and with the jack correctly aligned.
18. Rotate the handle until the wheel is clear of the ground.
19. Remove the wheel nuts.
20. Exchange the wheel on the vehicle with the spare wheel.
21. Remove any rust or dirt from the wheel nuts and studs, mounting surfaces and spare wheel.

Danger

Never use oil or grease on bolts or nuts as the nuts may come loose. The vehicle wheel could fall off and may lead to serious injury or death.

22. Put the wheel nuts back on with the rounded end of the nuts towards the wheel.
23. Tighten each wheel nut by hand, then use the wheel wrench to tighten the nuts until the wheel is held against the hub.
24. Lower the vehicle by reversing the jacking procedure.
25. Remove the jack from under the vehicle.



26. With the wheel on the ground, use the wheel wrench to tighten the wheel nuts in a crosswise sequence.

Warning

As soon as possible after changing a wheel, have the wheel nuts tightened with a torque wrench to 140 Nm (Newton metres). Wheel nuts must be tightened evenly to the correct torque, as wheel nuts which have not been tightened properly could eventually allow the wheel to come off while the vehicle is moving.

27. Stow the replaced wheel, by reversing Steps 8 to 13.
28. Stow the tools in the storage compartment. See *Tools* ⇨ 244.
29. Have the flat tyre renewed or repaired.

When reinstalling the repaired wheel:

1. Install the centre cap.
2. Place the cap on the wheel and tap it into place until it is flush with the wheel.

Jump Starting

Read the following warnings and procedure in full before attempting to jump start the vehicle.

If you are still unsure about jump starting, Holden strongly recommends for your safety and that of the vehicle that you seek the assistance of a suitably trained service technician.

Warning

Do not push start or tow start the vehicle. Therefore, if the battery is flat, jump start, but do not push start the vehicle.

Batteries produce explosive gases, contain corrosive acids and supply levels of electrical current high enough to cause burns. Therefore, adhere to the following when working near a battery:

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

- Do not attempt jump starting directly from the battery in the engine compartment.
- Do not let the jumper lead clamps touch each other or other metal parts.
- Do not allow the jumper leads to contact any rotating engine components.
- Do not use open flames or sparks near the battery.
- Do not smoke near the battery.
- Never use a quick charger to start the engine.
- The battery must be removed from the vehicle for recharging.
- Wear eye protection such as safety glasses and avoid leaning over the battery.

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

- Battery acid is corrosive. If it gets on your skin, wash with plenty of water immediately. If it gets in your eyes you should not only flush with lots of water, but should also seek medical help. Battery acid also damages paint and fabrics. To minimise damage, wash it off immediately.
 - Remove rings, metal watch bands and other metal jewellery before working around the battery.
 - If a permanently connected hands free telephone kit is fitted to the vehicle, remove the fuse for the telephone kit before jump starting. Remember to replace the fuse afterwards.
- A discharged battery can freeze at temperatures of 0°C.

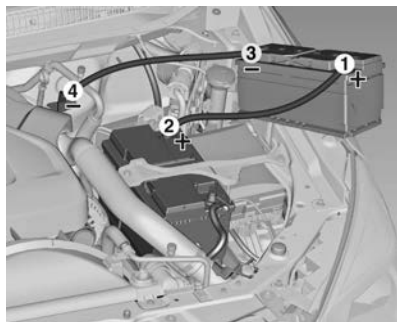
Defrost the frozen battery before connecting jumper leads.

- Use a booster battery with the same voltage (12 volts). Its capacity (Ah) must not be much less than that of the discharged battery.
- Use jumper leads with insulated terminals and a cross section of at least 25 mm².
- Do not disconnect the discharged battery from the vehicle.
- Switch off all unnecessary electrical devices.
- Do not allow the terminals of one lead to touch those of the other lead.
- The vehicles must not come into contact with each other during the jump starting process.

Jump Starting Procedure

1. Position the two vehicles so that they are not touching.
2. Apply the park brakes.

3. For manual transmissions, place the selector lever in neutral.
For automatic transmissions, place the selector lever in **P**.
4. Turn the ignition off.
5. Turn off all lamps and accessories in both vehicles, except the hazard warning flashers or any lights needed for the work area.



6. Connect one end of the red lead to the positive terminal of the booster battery (1).

7. Connect the other end of the red lead to the positive terminal of the discharged battery (2).
8. Connect the black lead to the negative terminal of the booster battery (3).
9. Connect the other end of the black lead to a vehicle grounding point, such as the engine block or an engine mounting bolt (4).

Connect as far away from the discharged battery as possible (at least 60 cm).

Note

Route the leads so that they cannot catch on rotating parts within the engine compartment.

10. Start the engine of the vehicle providing the jump start and allow to idle for at least 5 minutes.
11. Start the engine of the vehicle with the flat battery.

Start attempts should be made for no longer than 15 seconds at an interval of 1 minute.

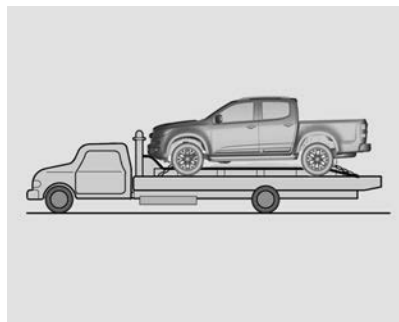
12. Allow both engines to idle for approximately 3 minutes with the leads connected.
13. Switch on the headlamps and the heated rear window of the vehicle that received the jump start.
14. Leave the engines running while removing the BLACK negative jumper lead first, followed by the RED positive jumper lead.

Note

While removing each clamp, do not touch any other metal while the other end remains attached.

Towing

Towing the Vehicle



A flat-bed tow truck is the best method of towing the vehicle to avoid damage.

Warning

No passenger should remain in the vehicle being towed.

Proper lifting or towing equipment is necessary when lifting or towing the vehicle to prevent damage. State and local laws must be followed.

In an emergency, the vehicle may be towed on all four wheels for short distances only, using the front towing eyes.



Caution

No load applied to an individual front towing eye shall exceed 1,500 kg (static or dynamic).

Emergency Towing Procedure

Tow only on hard-surfaced roads for a short distance and at low speeds:

1. Fit the towing equipment to the front towing eyes.

Do not attach towing equipment to the bumpers or brackets, suspension or cross members.

2. Turn the ignition key to **ON** to enable the steering lock, windscreen wipers and turn signals operation.
3. Place the selector lever in **N** or neutral.
4. Release the park brake.

Note

Automatic transmission: If the vehicle's battery is flat and the vehicle requires towing, see *Interruption of Power Supply* ⇨ 190.

Note

- A driver must be in the vehicle to steer and operate the brakes.
- Drive slowly when towing.
- Power assist for brakes and power steering are not available when the engine is turned off.

The brakes and steering still function, but require greater effort.

- To prevent exhaust fumes entering the towed vehicle, close the windows and press .
- Vehicles with damaged transmissions must not be towed.
- The wheels, axles, drive train, steering and brakes must be in good condition.
- Only the driver should be inside a towed vehicle.

Vehicle Recovery



The vehicle may be recovered using the front towing eyes.

Attach a tow rope or other suitably rated system to the towing eyes.

Ensure all equipment is in good condition and is being used correctly.

Caution

The front towing eyes are rated to 1,500 kg each. Any load (static or dynamic) applied to these locations must not exceed the rated capacity of each point.

Care should be taken not to damage the bumper fascia or other vehicle components with the tow rope or recovery system, during recovery.

Appearance Care

Exterior Care

Washing

The paintwork of the vehicle is exposed to environmental influences. Wash and wax regularly. When using automatic vehicle washes, select a programme that includes waxing.

Bird droppings, dead insects, resin, pollen and the like should be cleaned off immediately, as they contain aggressive constituents which can cause paint damage. Failure to do so may result in permanent damage, particularly in hot weather conditions.

Road bloom is a gradual build up of road and environmental grime. This should be removed with a paint cleaner once a year, in addition to normal washing.

If using a vehicle wash, comply with the vehicle wash manufacturer's instructions. Never use an automatic wash that requires anything touching the paint (other than

water). The wipers must be switched off. Remove antenna and external accessories.

If you wash your vehicle by hand, make sure that the insides of the wheel housings are also thoroughly rinsed out.

Clean edges and folds on opened doors and the bonnet as well as the areas they cover.

Have the door hinges of all doors greased by a Holden Dealer.

Caution

Do not clean the engine compartment with a steam-jet or high-pressure jet cleaner.

Thoroughly rinse and chamois off the vehicle. Rinse chamois frequently. Use separate chamois for painted and glass surfaces: remnants of wax on the windows will impair vision.

Do not use hard objects to remove spots of tar. Use tar removal spray on painted surfaces.



Warning

Take care when moving the vehicle after washing, in case water has affected the brakes. Applying the brakes lightly will indicate whether they have been affected. To dry them quickly, lightly apply the brakes while maintaining a slow forward speed with a clear area ahead, until brake performance returns to normal.

Exterior Lamps

Headlamp and other lamp covers are made of plastic. Do not use any abrasive, solvent based cleaners or caustic agents and do not dry-clean them.

Air Intakes

Clear debris from the air intakes, between the bonnet and windscreen and below the front bumper, when washing the vehicle.

Polishing and Waxing

Wax the vehicle regularly (at the latest when water no longer beads).

Polishing is necessary only if the paint has become dull or if solid deposits have become attached to it.

Paintwork polish with silicone forms a protective film, making waxing unnecessary.

Plastic body parts must not be treated with wax or polishing agents.

Windows and Windscreen Wiper Blades

Use a soft lint-free cloth or chamois leather together with window cleaner and insect remover.

- Never use abrasive cleaners to clean glass.
- Refer to a Holden Dealer for windscreen washer additive.
- Old wiper blades can cause windscreen scratching. Regularly inspect and replace them.

Caution

Do not operate the wiper blades by hand as this damages the wiper drive mechanism.

When cleaning the rear window, make sure the heating element inside is not damaged.

Clean smearing wiper blades with a soft cloth and window cleaner.

Wheels and Tyres

Do not use high-pressure jet cleaners.

- Remove oil and grease with soap and water or detergent.
- Do not use petrol to clean tyres.
- Use a good quality tyre and bumper shine if required.
- A good quality wheel cleaner can be used for cleaning alloy wheels.
- Do not use abrasive cleaners.

Paintwork Damage

Rectify minor paintwork damage with a touch-up pen before rust forms.

Have more extensive damage or rust areas repaired by your Holden Dealer.

Caution

Do not spill coolant on the vehicle's exterior surfaces as it can damage the paintwork. If you do, wash it off immediately.

Underbody

Substances can cause rust under the vehicle.

- Hose the underbody with clean water whenever the vehicle is washed.
- Where the vehicle is exposed to heavy concentrations of corrosive materials, inspect and wash the complete underbody at least once each year, preferably after winter exposure.

Interior Care **Warning**

Many cleaning products are toxic, flammable or may damage the interior. When cleaning the interior, avoid volatile cleaners such as acetone, lacquer thinners, enamel reducers, nail polish removers, or cleaners such as laundry soaps, bleaches or reducing agents. Never use carbon tetrachloride, petrol or naphtha for any cleaning purpose. Ensure that the vehicle is well ventilated while using any cleaners and always follow the cleaning product manufacturer's recommendations. Water based cleaners, rather than solvent based cleaners, are recommended.

Steam cleaning of seats is not recommended.

Interior and Upholstery

Only clean the vehicle interior, including the instrument panel fascia and panelling, with a dry cloth or interior cleaner.

The instrument panel should only be cleaned using a soft damp cloth.

Clean fabric upholstery with a vacuum cleaner and brush. Remove stains with an upholstery cleaner.

Clean seat belts with a mild, non-abrasive soap and lukewarm water.

After washing, thoroughly, sponge the solution out of the belts.

Avoid wipe damp cloth on areas near of Front Seat power switch, because the liquid can compromise the Seat's working. In case of heavy soiling, use leather care.

Caution
Close Velcro fasteners as open Velcro fasteners on clothing could damage seat upholstery.

Plastic and Rubber Parts

Plastic and rubber parts can be cleaned with the same cleaner as used to clean the body. Use interior cleaner if necessary. Do not use any other agent. Avoid solvents and petrol in particular. Do not use high pressure jet cleaners.

Floor Mats

Ensure that floor mats, when fitted, are securely fastened and do not interfere with pedal operation.

Service and Maintenance

General Information

Service Information 263

Recommended Fluids, Lubricants, and Parts

Recommended Fluids and Lubricants 264

General Information

Service Information

In order to ensure economical and safe vehicle operation and to maintain the value of your vehicle, it is of vital importance that all maintenance work is carried out at the proper intervals as specified.

See your Service/Warranty Booklet for the service schedules and for more information.

Engine Oil Life System

The vehicle has a computer system that lets you know when to change the engine oil and filter.

The frequency of the oil change depends on driving patterns, engine RPM and engine temperature.

When the system has calculated that oil life has been diminished, Change engine oil soon will appear in the Driver Information Centre (DIC).

When Change engine oil soon is displayed, have the engine oil and filter changed as soon as possible, within the next 1,000 km.

It is possible that, if you are driving under the best conditions, the oil life system may not indicate that an oil change is necessary for a longer period than that shown in the Maintenance schedule. However, the engine oil and filter must be changed in accordance with the Maintenance schedule outlined in the Service/Warranty Booklet.

Recommended Fluids, Lubricants, and Parts

Recommended Fluids and Lubricants

Engine Type	2.8L Diesel
Engine oil specification	SAE 5W-30;  dexos (dexos™ 2)
Coolant specification	50% clean fresh water and 50% Dexcool® anti-freeze coolant, conforming to specification number GM6277M
Manual transmission fluid	Dexron® VI
Automatic transmission fluid	Dexron® VI
Transfer case fluid (four-wheel drive)	Dexron® VI
Differential oil	Synthetic Hypoid 75W/90 GL5
Brake fluid	DOT 4 Hydraulic brake fluid conforming to specification number GMW3356
Battery	12 volts, 90 amp hours

Technical Data

Vehicle Identification

Vehicle Identification	
Number (VIN)	265
Identification Plate	265

Vehicle Data

Engine Data	267
Vehicle Weight	268
Vehicle Dimensions	269
Capacities and	
Specifications	270
Tyre Pressure	270

Vehicle Identification

Vehicle Identification Number (VIN)

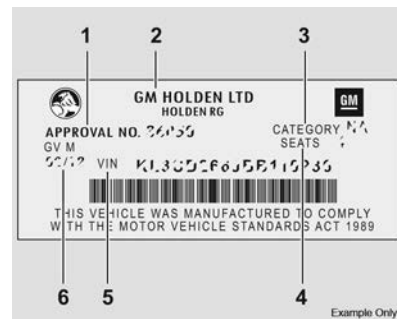
The Vehicle Identification Number (VIN) is located on the chassis rail on the driver's side.



The VIN is also located on the instrument panel visible through the windscreen.

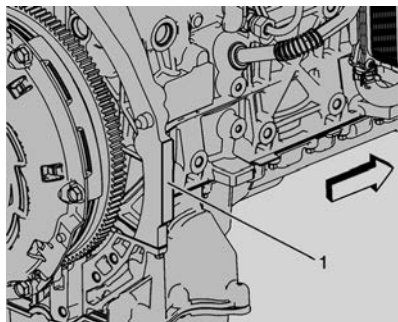
Identification Plate

An identification label is located on the front door frame or on the rear door frame (Space Cab).



- 1: Approval number
- 2: Manufacturer
- 3: Category
- 4: Number of seats
- 5: Vehicle identification number
- 6: Compliance date

Engine Number



⇨: Front of vehicle

The engine serial number (1) is located on the right side at the rear of the engine block.

Vehicle Data

Engine Data

Engine Type	2.8 L4 Turbo Diesel
Number of cylinders	4
Engine	2776 cc
Engine power	Please refer to holden.com.au
Engine torque	Please refer to holden.com.au
Diesel fuel	Complies with Euro Standard EN590

Vehicle Weight

Axle Loads

Maximum Front and Rear Axle Loads

Do not exceed the maximum axle loads, including the weight of any options, tow ball download when towing, or accessories fitted to the vehicle. Weigh at a weighbridge if unsure.

	Front Axle Load (kg)	Rear Axle Load (kg)
LS	1450	1850
LT	1450	1850
LTZ	1450	1850
Z71	1450	1850

Refer to the vehicle's compliance plate for gross vehicle mass (GVM) figures.

Carrying Capacity

Carrying capacity (payload) is the maximum capacity of the vehicle for the carriage of all non-standard items including cargo carrying devices (e.g. tray or body, if applicable), the cargo itself, occupants, tow ball download when towing, optional equipment and accessories.

Light commercial vehicles, depending on their model and specification, have different carrying capacities.

Vehicle Dimensions

Dimensions (mm)

		Length	Width (incl. mirrors)	Height	Front and Rear Track	Front overhang	Wheel Base
Single cab chassis	4x2 / 4x4	—	2132	1800	1570	957	3096
Crew cab chassis	4x2 / 4x4	—	2132	1795	1570	957	3096
Crew cab pickup (LS / LT)	4x2 / 4x4	5361	2132	1781	1570	957	3096
Crew cab pickup (LTZ)	4x2 / 4x4	5361	2132	1800	1570	957	3096
Crew Cab pickup (Z71)	4x4	5408	2132	1790 (1823 with Roof Rack)	1570	1004	3096
Space cab chassis	4x4	—	2132	1799	1570	957	3096
Space cab pickup	4x4	5361	2132	1795	1570	957	3096

The above figures are based on the design dimensions.

Note

Length of cab chassis is determined by tray or body fitted.

Capacities and Specifications

Engine Type	2.8 L4 Turbo Diesel
Refill engine oil including filter (approximately)	5.6 L
Coolant (approximately)	9.0 L
Fuel tank	76.0 L

Tyre Pressure

Tyre Size	Wheel Size and Profile	Recommended Pressure													
		Up to 3 people (Light)				Up to 3 people (ECO)				Full load (Max)				Spare	
		Front		Rear		Front		Rear		Front		Rear		—	
		kPa	PSI	kPa	PSI	kPa	PSI	kPa	PSI	kPa	PSI	kPa	PSI	kPa	PSI
245/70R16 XL 111S	16 x 6.5J	240	35	240	35	240	35	240	35	260	38	300	44	300	44
255/65R17 SL 110S	17 x 7.0J	240	35	240	35	240	35	240	35	260	38	300	44	300	44
265/60R18 SL 110T	18 x 7.5J	240	35	240	35	240	35	240	35	260	38	300	44	300	44

Customer Information

Customer Information

Trademarks and Licence Agreements	271
Owner Assistance	271

Vehicle Data Recording and Privacy

Vehicle Data Recording and Privacy	273
--	-----

Customer Information

Trademarks and Licence Agreements

Dexos™ is a trademark of General Motors LLC

Dexron® and Dexcool® are registered trademarks of General Motors LLC

Owner Assistance

Holden Customer Care

At Holden, we want you to be completely satisfied with your ownership experience. This applies to your vehicle and any Holden representative you may deal with.

Refer below for two options for seeking assistance with your query.

Holden Dealerships

Holden encourages you to seek assistance from your Holden Dealership. Each Holden Dealership is equipped to manage any sales, servicing, parts or technical query.

In the instance that you wish to escalate a query to a higher level of staff, further options are available to you.

As a first step, Holden suggests you discuss any concern with the relevant Department Manager (Sales Manager or Service Manager).

Alternatively, the Dealership General Manager or Dealer Principal will also be happy to assist you.

Holden Customer Care Office

Should you wish to speak to a Holden representative, you are welcome to contact the Holden Customer Care team.

Refer below for operating hours and various methods of communication.

Operating Hours

Weekdays: 8am – 7pm AEST

Saturday: 9am – 1pm AEST

Telephone

Holden Customer Care can be telephoned from anywhere within Australia for only the cost of a local call.

The contact number is:

1800 033 349

Email

Alternatively, you may prefer to email Holden at:

holdencustomercares@gm.com

Written Correspondence

You can also write to Holden at the address below:

**The Manager
Holden Customer Care Centre
GPO Box 1714
Melbourne 3001**

Your written correspondence should clearly outline your concern or query and include:

- Your name and address
- Telephone numbers, both private and business

- Servicing dealer's name and address
- Vehicle model
- Vehicle identification number (I.S.O.V.I.N.), refer to the inside front cover of the Service/Warranty Booklet in your vehicle's glovebox
- Date of purchase
- Current odometer reading

Most of this information will be found on the Vehicle Identification Certificate, located inside the front cover of the Service/Warranty Booklet in your vehicle's glovebox.

Before you write however, remember that the telephone is a quicker and more effective means of communication.

New Zealand

The information in this Owner's Manual applies primarily to Australian Holden vehicles and there may be some differences to the Warranty and Owner Assistance provisions for New Zealand.

Applicable details for New Zealand are set out in the Holden Warranty and Owner Assistance Information booklet enclosed in the New Zealand glovebox wallet.

New Zealand Assistance can be reached on:

0800 HOLDEN (0800 465 336)

This number provides access to New Zealand Roadside Assistance as well as New Zealand Customer Care.

Alternatively, you may prefer to email Holden at:

holdencustomercares@gm.com

You can also write to Holden at the address below:

**The Manager
Holden Customer Care Centre
PO Box 11195
Ellerslie
Auckland 1542**

Vehicle Data Recording and Privacy

Event Data Recorders

The vehicle has a number of sophisticated systems that monitor and control several vehicle data. Some data may be stored during regular operation to facilitate repair of detected malfunctions, other data is stored only in a crash or near crash event by systems commonly called event data recorders (EDR).

The systems may record data about the condition of the vehicle and how it was operated (e.g. engine speed, brake application, seat belt usage). To read this data, special equipment and access to the vehicle are required. This will take place when the vehicle is serviced by a Holden dealer. Some data is electronically fed into global diagnostic systems.

The manufacturer will not access information about a crash event or share it with others except:

- With the consent of the vehicle owner or, if the vehicle is leased, with the consent of the lessee.
- In response to an official request of police or similar government office.
- As part of the manufacturer's defence in case of legal proceedings.
- As required by law.

In addition, the manufacturer may use the collected or received data:

- For the manufacturer's research needs.
- To make it available for research needs where appropriate confidentiality is maintained and need is shown.
- To share summary data which is not tied to a specific vehicle with other organisations for research purposes.

Index

A

Add-On Electrical Equipment ...	219
Adjustable Air Vents	178
Adjustments	
Seat, Initial Drive	33
Agreements	
Trademarks and	
License	139, 172
Air Cleaner/Filter, Engine	229
Air Conditioning	174, 176
Air Conditioning Regular	
Operation	180
Air Filter, Passenger	
Compartment	179
Air Intake	179
Airbags	
Curtain	44
Front	42
Seat Belt Tensioner Light	70
Side	43
System Check	41
Alarm System	
Anti-theft	24
AM-FM Radio	99, 154
Antenna	
Fixed Mast	102, 157
Anti-theft	
Alarm System	24

Anti-theft (cont'd)	
Alarm System Messages	80
Antilock Brake System (ABS) ...	196
Warning Light	71
Appearance Care	
Exterior	259
Interior	261
Apple CarPlay and	
Android Auto	134
Armrest Storage	53
Audio	
Bluetooth	106
Theft-Deterrent Feature	148
Automatic	
Light Control	87
Transmission	189
Transmission Fluid	228
Automatic Transmission	
Electronic Driving	
Programs	190
Fault	190
Interruption of Power	
Supply	190
Manual Mode	190
Shift Lever	189
Transmission Display	189
Auxiliary Devices	164
Auxiliary Jack	105

B		Bulb Replacement (cont'd)		Climate Control Systems (cont'd)	
Battery	231	Taillamps	236	Electronic	176
Jump Starting	255	Buying New Tyres	250	Heating	174
Power Protection	93	Buzzers, Warning	76	Compartment	54
Voltage and Charging				Load	54
Messages	77	C		Computer, Trip	83
Blade Replacement, Wiper	233	Camera, Rear Vision	208	Control System	
Bleeding		Capacities and		Emission	222
Diesel Fuel System	233	Specifications	270	Controls	
Bluetooth		Carbon Monoxide		Steering Wheel	97, 150
Overview	127, 128, 132, 165	Engine Exhaust	187	Convex Mirrors	25
Bluetooth Audio	106	Tailgate	23	Coolant	
Bonnet	224	Caution, Danger, and Warning	3	Engine	229
Boot	54	Central Locking System	21	Engine Temperature Gauge	68
Brakes	196	Chains, Tyre	251	Cooling	174, 176
Antilock	196	Charging System Light	70	Cooling System	
Assist	197	Check		Engine Messages	78
Brake and Clutch System		Malfunction Indicator Engine		Courtesy Lamps	91
Warning Light	70	Light	70	Cover	
Fluid	230	Child Restraint Systems		Tonneau	55
Parking	197	Top Tether	49	Coverage Explanations	121
System Messages	77	Child Restraints		Covers	90
Break-In, New Vehicle	184	ISOFIX	49	Misted Lamps	90
Bulb Replacement		Systems	45	Wheel	250
Front Turn Signal Lamps	235	Cleaning		Cruise Control	201
Headlamps	233, 234	Exterior Care	259	Light	75
Licence Plate Lamps	237	Interior Care	261	Messages	77
		Climate Control Systems	174	Cupholders	52
		Air Conditioning	174		

Curtain Airbag System 44

D

Danger, Warning, and Caution 3

Database Coverage

Explanations 121

Daytime Running

Lamps (DRL) 89

Descent Control System 72

Descent Control

System (DCS) 199

Destination 113

Devices

Auxiliary 164

Diesel

Starting Your Engine 185

Diesel Fuel System Bleeding ... 233

Diesel Particulate Filter 187

Diesel Particulate Filter

Messages 78

Dimensions

Vehicle 269

Displays

Automatic Transmission 189

Door

Ajar Messages 77

Central Locking System 21

Manual Door Locks 21

Rear Doors 23

Driver Information

Centre (DIC) 75

Driving

Electronic Programs 190

Environment 182

Hill and Mountain Roads 184

Off-Road 183

E

Electrical Equipment,

Add-On 219

Electrical System

Engine Compartment Fuse

Block 240

Fuses 238

Instrument Panel Fuse

Block 242

Electronic Climate Control

System 176

Electronic Driving Programs 190

Electronic Stability Control 198

Electronic Stability Control

(ESC) Off Light 72

Electronic Stability Control

Indicator Light 72

Emission Control System 222

Emission Information 222

Engine

Air Cleaner/Filter 229

Engine (cont'd)

Check and Service Engine

Soon Light 70

Compartment Overview 226

Coolant 229

Coolant Temperature Gauge ... 68

Cooling System Messages 78

Exhaust 187

Oil Life System 227

Oil Messages 78

Oil Pressure Light 74

Power Messages 78

Starting 185

Starting Your Diesel Engine ... 185

Engine Data 267

Entry Lighting 92

Exit Lighting 92

Exterior Lamp Controls 87

F

Fault, Automatic

Transmission 190

Filter 187

Fuel 232

Filter,

Engine Air Cleaner 229

Fixed Air Vents 179

Fixed Mast Antenna 102, 157

Flash-to-Pass 88

Flashers, Hazard Warning	89
Flat Tyre	
Changing	251
Fluid	
Automatic Transmission	228
Brakes	230
Four-Wheel Drive	
Transfer Case	192
Washer	230
Fog Lamps	
Front	90
Fog Light, Rear	75
Folding Mirrors	25
Forward Collision Alert	
(FCA) System	203
Four-Wheel Drive	192
Four-Wheel-Drive Light	71
Front Airbag System	42
Front Fog Lamp	
Light	74
Front Seat Position Seats	
Adjustment	33
Front Seats	
Adjustment	33
Heated	36
Front Turn Signal Lamps	235
Fuel	212
Filling the Tank	213

Fuel (cont'd)	
Filter	232
Gauge	67
Low Fuel Warning Light	74
System Messages	78
Fuses	238
Engine Compartment Fuse	
Block	240
Instrument Panel Fuse	
Block	242

G

Gauges	
Engine Coolant Temperature ...	68
Fuel	67
Odometer	67
Speedometer	66
Tachometer	67
Trip Odometer	67
Turn Signal	68
Warning Lights and	
Indicators	66
General Information	
Vehicle Care	222
Global Positioning	
System (GPS)	119
Glove Box	52
Guidance	
Problems with the Route	120

H

Hands-Free Phone	170, 172
Hazard Warning Flashers	89
Head Restraints	32
Headlamps	
Automatic Light Control	87
Bulb Replacement	233
Daytime Running	
Lamps (DRL)	89
Flash-to-Pass	88
High-Beam On Light	74
High/Low Beam Changer	88
Lamps On Reminder	75
Range Adjustment	88
Headlight Range Adjustment	88
Heated	
Rear Window	29
Heated Front Seats	36
Heating	174, 176
High-Beam On Light	74
Hill and Mountain Roads	184
Hill Start Assist (HSA)	197
Home Page	149
Horn	13, 63
HVAC	174, 176

I

Identification Plate	265
If the System Needs Service	120
Ignition Positions	184
Immobiliser	24
Light	74
Indicator	
Vehicle Ahead	72
Information	
Service	263
Information on Loading the	
Vehicle	59
Infotainment	147
Instrument Panel	
Storage Area	51
Instrument Panel Overview	5, 61
Interruption of Power Supply	190
Introduction	2, 95
ISOFIX Child Restraint	
Systems	49

J

Jack	
Auxiliary	105
Jump Starting	255

K

Key and Lock Messages	79
Keys	17

L

Lamps	
Courtesy	91
Daytime Running (DRL)	89
Exterior Controls	87
Front Fog	90
Front Turn Signal	235
Licence Plate	237
Malfunction Indicator	70
Messages	79
Misted Covers	90
On Reminder	75
Reading	91
Reversing	90
Taillamps	236
Lane Departure Warning	210
Lane Departure Warning Light ...	72
Light	
Electronic Stability Control	
(ESC), Off	72
Pre-Heat	73
Traction Control	
System (TCS)	73
Lighting	
Entry	92

Lighting (cont'd)

Exit	92
Illumination Control	90
Lights	72
Airbag and Seat Belt	
Tensioner	70
Antilock Brake System	
(ABS) Warning	71
Automatic Control	87
Brake and Clutch System	70
Charging System	70
Cruise Control	75
Descent Control System	72
Engine Oil Pressure	74
Flash-to-Pass	88
Fog Lamp, Rear	75
Four-Wheel-Drive	71
Front Fog Lamp	74
High-Beam On	74
High/Low Beam Changer	88
Immobiliser	74
Lane Departure Warning	72
Low Fuel Warning	74
Safety Belt Reminders	69
Traction Control System	
Warning	73
Trailer Indicator	75

Lights (cont'd)	
Tyre Pressure Monitoring System	73
Up-Shift	71
Loading the Vehicle	59
Locks	
Central Locking System	21
Manual Door	21
Safety	22
Low Fuel Warning Light	74
M	
Maintenance	
Air Conditioning Regular Operation	180
Maintenance Schedule	
Recommended Fluids and Lubricants	264
Transfer Case	192
Malfunction Indicator Lamp	70
Manual Mode	190
Manual Transmission	191
Manual Windows	27
Map Data Updates	120
Maps	111
Messages	
Airbag System	80
Anti-theft Alarm System	80

Messages (cont'd)	
Battery Voltage and Charging	77
Brake System	77
Diesel Particulate Filter	78
Door Ajar	77
Engine Cooling System	78
Engine Oil	78
Engine Power	78
Fuel System	78
Key and Lock	79
Lamp	79
Object Detection System	79
Ride Control System	79
Service Vehicle	80
Steering System	80
Transmission	81
Tyre	80
Vehicle	76
Vehicle Reminder	82
Vehicle Speed	82
Messaging	
Text	133
Mirrors	
Automatic Dimming	
Rearview	27
Convex	25
Folding	25

Mirrors (cont'd)	
Manual Rearview	26
Power	25
Misted Light Covers	90
Monitor System, Tyre Pressure	245
N	
Navigation	
Destination	113
Using the System	107
Navigation Symbols	111
New Vehicle Break-In	184
O	
Object Detection System	
Messages	79
Odometer	67
Trip	67
Off-Road	183
Driving	183
Oil	
Engine	226
Engine Oil Life System	227
Messages	78
Pressure Light	74
Operation	
Infotainment	151

Outlets	
Power	65
Overview	95, 148
Instrument Panel	61
Owner Assistance	271

P

Parking	186
Brake	197
Parking Assist	205
Passenger Compartment Air	
Filter	179
Personalisation	
Vehicle	85
Phone	
Apple CarPlay and	
Android Auto	134
Bluetooth	127, 128,
	132, 165
Hands-Free	170, 172
Port	
USB	103, 158
Positioning	
Vehicle	119
Power	
Mirrors	25
Outlets	65
Protection, Battery	93
Seat Adjustment	35

Power (cont'd)	
Windows	27
Pre-Heat Light	73
Pregnancy, Using Safety Belts ...	40
Pressure	
Tyre	270
Privacy	
Vehicle Data Recording	273
Problems with Route	
Guidance	120

R

Radio	
AM-FM	154
Radio Reception	100, 101, 155
Radios	
AM-FM Radio	99
Reading Lamps	91
Rear Doors	23
Rear Fog Light	75
Rear Seats	36
Rear Vision Camera (RVC)	208
Rear Windows	
Heated	29
Rearview Mirrors	26
Automatic Dimming	27
Recognition	
Voice	121

Recommended Fluids and	
Lubricants	264
Remote Control	20
Radio	20
Remote Vehicle Start	18
Replacement Parts	
Airbags	45
Replacing Airbag System	45
Replacing Safety Belt System	
Parts after a Crash	41
Restraints	
Where to Put	48
Reverse Lamps	90
Ride Control Systems	198
Electronic Stability (ESC)	198
Messages	79
Roof Rack System	59
Rotation, Tyres	249

S

Safety Belts	37
Care	40
Reminders	69
Replacing after a Crash	41
Three-Point	39
Use During Pregnancy	40
Safety Locks	22
Seats	
Adjustment, Front	33

Seats (cont'd)	
Head Restraints	32
Heated Front	36
Position, Front	33
Power Adjustment, Front	35
Rear	36
Underseat Storage	53
Service	
Climate Control System	174
Doing Your Own Work	223
Engine Soon Light	70
Vehicle Messages	80
Service and Maintenance	
Service Information	263
Service Information	263
Servicing System	120
Settings	118, 135
Shift Lever	189
Side Airbag System	43
Signals, Turn and	
Lane-Change	89
Specifications and	
Capacities	270
Speedometer	66
Start Assist, Hill	197
Start Vehicle, Remote	18
Starting the Diesel Engine	185
Starting the Engine	185

Steering	182
Wheel Adjustment	62
Wheel Controls	63
Steering System Messages	80
Steering Wheel Controls	97, 150
Storage	
Boot	54
Vehicle	222
Storage Areas	
Armrest	53
Glove Box	52
Information on Loading the	
Vehicle	59
Instrument Panel	51
Roof Rack System	59
Sunglasses	53
Underseat	53
Sun Visors	30
Sunglass Storage	53
Symbols	
Navigation	111
System	
Forward Collision	
Alert (FCA)	203
Global Positioning	119
Infotainment	147
Roof Rack	59

T	
Tachometer	67
Tailgate	23
Taillamps	236
Technical Data	
Tyre Pressure	270
Text Messaging	133
Theft-Deterrent Systems	
Immobiliser	24
Three-Point Seat Belt	39
Tire Pressure Monitoring	
System Light	73
Tonneau Cover	55
Tools	244
Top-Tether Child Restraint	
Systems	49
Towing	
Trailer	215
Trailer Sway Control (TSC) ...	218
Vehicle	258
Traction	
Control System (TCS)	198
Control System Warning	
Light	73
Traction Control System	
(TCS) Off Light	73

Trademarks and

License

Agreements 139, 172, 271

Trailer

Sway Control (TSC) 218

Towing 215

Trailer Indicator Light 75

Transfer Case 192

Transmission

Automatic 189

Fluid, Automatic 228

Messages 81

Transmission Display 189

Tread Depth 249

Trip Computer 83

Trip Odometer 67

Turn and Lane-Change

Signals 89

Turn Signal 68

Tyre Pressure 270

Tyres

Buying New Tyres 250

Chains 251

Changing 251

Messages 80

Pressure 244

Tyres (cont'd)

Pressure Monitor Operation .. 247

Pressure Monitor System 245

Rotation 249

Tyres and Wheels 244

U

Underseat Storage 53

Updates

Map Data 120

Upshift light 71

USB Port 103, 158

Using the Navigation System ... 107

Using the System 98

Using This Manual 3

V

Vehicle

Identification Number (VIN) ... 265

Messages 76

Personalisation 85

Reminder Messages 82

Remote Start 18

Speed Messages 82

Towing 258

Vehicle Ahead Indicator 72

Vehicle Care

Tyre Pressure 244

Vehicle Data Recording and

Privacy 273

Vehicle Dimensions 269

Vehicle Identification

Plate 265

Vehicle Positioning 119

Vehicle Storage 222

Vehicle Weight 268

Ventilation

Adjustable Air 178

Fixed Air Vents 179

Visors 30

Voice Recognition 121

W

Warning

Caution and Danger 3

Warning Chimes 76

Warning Lights, Gauges, and

Indicators 66

Warnings

Hazard Flashers 89

Washer Fluid 230

Weights	
Vehicle	268
Wheel Covers	250
Wheels and Tyres	244
Where to Put the Restraint	48
Windows	
Heated, Rear	29
Manual	27
Power	27
Windshield	
Wiper/Washer	64
Wiper Blade Replacement	233

